

# MEDICINE BUDDHA TEACHINGS



by **Khenchen Thrangu Rinpoche**  
Introduced, edited, and annotated by Lama Tashi Namgyal



# MEDICINE BUDDHA TEACHINGS



# MEDICINE BUDDHA TEACHINGS

by

Khenchen Thrangu Rinpoche

Oral Translation by Lama Yeshe Gyamtso

Introduced, Edited, and Annotated by Lama Tashi Namgyal

Snow Lion Publications  
Ithaca, New York ♦ Boulder, Colorado

Snow Lion Publications  
P.O. Box 6483  
Ithaca, NY 14851  
(607) 273-8519  
www.snowlionpub.com

Copyright © 2004 Khenchen Thrangu Rinpoche  
and Kagyu Shenpen Ösel Chöling

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced by any means  
without prior written permission from the publisher.

Printed in Canada on acid-free recycled paper.

ISBN 1-55939-216-9

Cataloging-in-Publication Data  
available from the Library of Congress

# CONTENTS

---

INTRODUCTION   vii

## PART ONE

### THE MEDICINE BUDDHA SADHANA TEACHINGS

1. A Practice That Is Extremely Effective  
in the Removal of Sickness   3
2. The Great King of Medicine Is Active in Pacifying  
the Suffering of Beings   13
3. The Visualization Uncovers the Inherent Purity of Phenomena   27
4. Because of Its Vastness, Offering the Entire Universe  
Produces Great Merit   40
5. On the Origin of Auspiciousness in the Substances  
and Symbols   53

## PART TWO

### MEDICINE BUDDHA SADHANA IN TIBETAN AND ENGLISH   69

## PART THREE

### THE MEDICINE BUDDHA SUTRA

1. Twelve Extraordinary Aspirations for the Benefit  
of Sentient Beings   105
2. The Buddha Shakyamuni Taught This Sutra  
to Inspire Us to Practice   113
3. Mudras, or Ritual Gestures, Help to Clarify the Visualization   125

4. The Benefits of Hearing and Recollecting  
the Medicine Buddha's Name 139
5. Regular Supplication of the Medicine Buddha  
Brings Protection 146
6. The Correct View Regarding Both Deities and Maras 158
7. Somehow Our Buddha Nature Has Been Awakened,  
and We Are Very Fortunate Indeed 172

PART FOUR

THE TWELVE GREAT ASPIRATIONS OF THE MEDICINE BUDDHA 177

NOTES 183

APPENDIX

MEDICINE BUDDHA SADHANA WITH TIBETAN 193

## INTRODUCTION

---



**A**CCORDING TO THE TEACHINGS OF THE BUDDHA SHAKYAMUNI, recorded in the *Sutra on Entering the Womb*, there are four classes of illness. The first includes illnesses which are relatively inconsequential, and from these illnesses one will recover whether or not one takes medicines.

The second class of illness includes more serious, even dangerous, illnesses, but if one takes the appropriate medicines, one will recover from these as well. A modern update of this category would surely include many effective modern medical procedures, such as acupuncture, surgery, radiation therapy, chemotherapy, etc.

The third class of illness includes those for which medicines are of no use, illnesses from which one cannot recover simply through the use of medicines or other medical procedures. These illnesses, however, can be cured, and one can thereby recover one's health, through the practice of appropriate spiritual techniques taught in the buddhadharma.

The fourth class of illness includes those which have a karmically determined irreversibly terminal nature. When one's body manifests such an illness, death is inevitable and no amount of medicine or medical procedure can prevent it. In fact, the use of medicines in such cases—with the exception of narcotics for pain—only serves to increase one's suffering.

The teachings on the Medicine Buddha which follow in these pages, given by the extraordinary Tibetan meditation master and scholar Khenchen Thrangu Rinpoche, are intended most particularly for those who are suffering from the third class of illness, illnesses for which no successful medical treatment has been found, but which are still curable through the practice of profound spiritual techniques. In the Buddhist tradition the most notable of these techniques are the spiritual practices associated with the Medicine Buddha. Through such practices, the innate healing powers inherent in the basic nature of all sentient beings can be uncovered and accessed. In



this way sick persons can cure themselves of the illnesses that medicines and medical procedures are unable to cure.

As normal human beings we have a tendency to think that illnesses are physically based and require physical solutions. Therefore, it is reasonable to ask how it is possible that spiritual practice can help the body cure itself. This question becomes even more critical for those who have no faith in the miraculous powers of a creator god. But if one has confidence in or even an intimation of any kind of spiritual reality that transcends the limitations of a strictly material universe, then one will find oneself extremely interested in the answer to this question provided by the Buddhist tradition.

In the vajrayana tradition of Buddhism, we would answer this question—how one can cure oneself through spiritual practice—from two perspectives: from the perspective of the ultimate truth of the nature of reality, and from the perspective of relative truths, which discuss how things appear to us when we have not yet realized the ultimate truth of the nature of reality.

From the standpoint of ultimate truth, all phenomena, including all the phenomena that we misapprehend as physical matter, are empty of any inherent existence. Though they appear to be very solid and real to us, they are in truth mere illusory appearances lacking any substantial reality, like a light show in space, like the aurora borealis, a rainbow, an echo, a flash of lightning, a mirage, a magical display, a dream, an hallucination, like the images in movies and on television, or like the reflection of the moon in water. None of these illusory appearances, including what we take to be matter, have any true, separate, permanent, solid or substantial existence independent of ever-changing equally non-existent causes and conditions. When scientists today investigate and scrutinize the atoms which we for centuries have thought of as the building blocks of the material world, they find no indivisible and, therefore, permanent particles of matter. They find mostly space with variously described sorts of energies rushing around within it. These energies are also insubstantial, impermanent, and unpredictable. They cannot be said to have any kind of permanent existence. The more scientists investigate, the more illusory the nature of matter appears. The Buddha discovered this same truth in meditation 2,500 years ago, and the Buddhist tradition has been teaching it ever since.

All phenomena are ephemeral, constantly changing in the same way as the appearances within a kaleidoscope constantly change. None of these

illusory appearances—including the appearances of sickness and disease, which are also mere empty appearances—have the power to cause us suffering unless we mistakenly apprehend them as real and substantial. When we misapprehend these appearances, when we take them to be real, we fixate on them and thereby cause them to solidify in our experience. This gives them the appearance of solid, substantial reality, and then in our lives these illnesses do, in fact, become for us very real and solid, and we suffer from them.

Still, though everything that we experience is empty of any kind of substantial existence, we still experience something. What is it that we experience? We experience mind.

In discussing the nature of things, or the nature of appearances, which in the ultimate analysis are merely empty, insubstantial radiations or light-manifestations of an equally empty and insubstantial, though luminous, mind, Khenchen Thrangu Rinpoche expresses the teachings of the Buddha given 2,500 years ago in the third turning of the wheel of dharma, his third great cycle of teachings:

Before meditating, before recognizing things to be as they are, one will have seen the radiance of this mind as solid external things that are sources of pleasure and pain. But through practicing meditation, and through coming to recognize things as they are, you will come to see that all of these appearances are merely the display or radiance or light of the mind which experiences them.

When one is able *truly* to recognize sickness and disease as “merely the display or radiance or light of the mind which experiences them,” empty of any inherent substantial existence, then one’s suffering disappears. Regardless of which of the first three categories of illness one is suffering from, if one is able to recognize its true nature — that it is merely the empty magical display or radiance or light of the mind which experiences it — one will experience no suffering, and depending on the level and completeness of this realization, one’s illness will dissolve in the empty pure primordial expanse, and one will be cured. Even if one is afflicted by the fourth category of illness and it is karmically inevitable that one will die from that particular illness, one will die without suffering or fear, because all phenomena, including illness, are empty. They lack any kind of substantial, permanent

reality independent of equally empty and interdependent causes and conditions. They are all merely insubstantial, ever-changing, kaleidoscopic light shows in the primordially pure open expanse of empty luminous awareness.

This is the view of illness and disease from the standpoint of ultimate truth, and it is very useful and helpful to understand. It must be remembered, however, that ultimate truth can never be accurately expressed through words and conceptual constructs. Words and concepts, even the verbal concept “ultimate truth,” can never be more than “the finger pointing at the moon.” They are not “the moon” itself. Ultimate truth ultimately is inexpressible in words or concepts.

Although the Buddha Shakyamuni gave many teachings on ultimate truth, he recognized that were he only to give teachings on ultimate truth, the vast majority of sentient beings would neither be able to understand them nor be able to make spiritual progress based upon them. Therefore, the Buddha also taught what is known as relative truth, which is the truth of things expressed in terms and ideas that ordinary people can understand. They can understand relative truth more easily because it accords more closely to the manner in which they currently perceive and understand the world and their own personal experience. The Buddha taught a great variety of relative truths, because there are a great variety of beings who have a great variety of differing dispositions, interests, and aptitudes. In this way, the Buddha presented truths, and spiritual paths based on these truths, that would be beneficial to people in the short run, while gradually pointing the way to progressively deeper and more profound spiritual understanding in the long run.

From the perspective of relative truth, everything that we experience—including all the various kinds of happiness and well-being as well as all the various types of suffering—arises from causes and conditions. If we experience happiness, good health, and spiritual growth, we do so because we have practiced virtue in the past. If we experience sorrow and other forms of suffering, we do so because we have engaged in unvirtuous or negative activity in the past, in harmful and evil deeds of various sorts. This principle of cause and effect explains the existence of illness and disease. If we suffer illness or disease of any sort, it is not because of some sort of accidental physical cause unrelated to our own past negative actions of body, speech, and mind. Rather, all diseases and illnesses, and all physical suffering arise

ing out of disease and illness, arise as a result of negative karma—as a result of evil deeds of body, speech, and mind.

When these evil or unskillful deeds are minor, they will exhaust themselves naturally and one will get well whether or not one uses medicines. The duration of the illnesses arising out of such minor evil deeds will vary according to the frequency and period of time over which one committed such evil or unskillful deeds, as well as upon the factor of spiritual practice.

If these evil or unskillful deeds are serious, and yet we live in a time when, as a result of good causes arising out of virtuous actions we personally and collectively have performed in the past, there are effective medicines and medical procedures available which can cure us, and if we use them, we will recover from our illness or illnesses through the use of these medicines and procedures.

If the karmic causes of our illness or illnesses are extremely severe and we have not reached the eighth bhumi of bodhisattvic enlightenment—at which point we can transcend all physical illness if we so desire—then we will surely die of that illness.

But if the karmic causes of our illness or illnesses are so strong that medicines and medical procedures cannot cure us, but not so strong as to determine the certainty of imminent death based on that illness, and if we are willing to exert ourselves in the practice of dharma, then dharma practice can cure us. In such cases, the practice of the Medicine Buddha is invaluable.

When we speak of evil deeds or unskillful actions as being the causes of our illnesses, it is vitally important that we understand that these evil deeds are not simply the deeds of our body and speech, but also of our mind. Of course, if we kill out of anger and aggression, these actions create strong negative karma that leave strong negative imprints in our mental continuum. If these negative imprints are not purified by spiritual practice, they will subsequently give rise to a variety of circumstances: to our being killed, to illness, to mental suffering—including increased anger and aggression and the continuing desire and irresistible urge to kill—and to being born in desolate environments in which there is lots of killing or even perpetual warfare. All of this depends on and is conditioned by the frequency and the intensity of our killing and the intensity of the emotions motivating and driving our killing. One should always remember, however, that these causes can be purified and that one can avoid such calamity through spiritual practice

Short of physically engaging in killing, if out of anger and aggression we say such things as, “I hate you so much I am going to kill you,” or “I hate you so much, I could to kill you,” or “You are a despicable being and I hate you,” or simply “I hate you,” or “your behavior is despicable and I am very angry with you,” then we are still creating verbal and mental karma which can become the basis of illness.

But even if we neither kill nor express angry and hateful sentiments, if we merely harbor in mind and ruminate on anger and hatred and resentment and bitterness towards others, and thereby reinforce these sentiments and cause them to grow stronger and increasingly intractable, these actions of our minds will still give rise to illness. There is no medicine that will cure this type of illness completely, because its causes are not physical. Its causes are mental and emotional, and unless these causes exhaust themselves naturally, the only way that this type of illness can truly be cured is by purifying the mental and emotional causes that give rise to it. This is one of the reasons why the practice of forgiveness is so important.

Forgiveness in this sense does not mean that out of my exalted or greater goodness and/or superior wisdom, I magnanimously forgive the person whom I imagine to be responsible for my anger, hatred and/or resentment. It means rather that I recognize that regardless of what another may do to me, my anger or hatred—and the harm that it can do to me physically, emotionally, and mentally—is my own. It comes from nowhere else but my own mind, the character of which has been formed by my own actions, both negative and positive. Recognizing this truth and making the appropriate mental adjustments is the basis of reviving mental, emotional, and physical health, which in turn becomes the basis of true reconciliation with others. Since the practice of the Medicine Buddha derives its effect from the powerful and rapid purification of mental and emotional negativity and of the karmic causes that give rise to such negativity, the Medicine Buddha is a particularly powerful spiritual technique for accomplishing such forgiveness, revivification, and reconciliation.

The practice of the Medicine Buddha is also invaluable in counteracting any sort of illness arising out of excessive desire, including addiction or addictive behavior: relationship addiction, drug addiction, alcohol addiction, over-eating addiction, addiction to using harsh words, etc. When the Buddha first taught about the origin of suffering, the Second Noble Truth, he taught that it was *tanha* (Pali), which has been translated as “thirsting”

or “craving.” In modern day parlance, *tanha* might also be translated as “addiction.” The idea of *tanha* or addiction is that one’s thirsting or craving after something is so strong that one finds it extremely difficult, if not nearly impossible, to resist grasping after the object of one’s desire. The practice of the Medicine Buddha, if engaged in with effort and concentration and with the primary intention of reversing or purifying one’s addiction, quite naturally increases the “No!” in one’s system, and enables one with increasingly less struggle to let go of and finally give up one’s addictive behavior. Therefore, the practice of the Medicine Buddha is invaluable.

Most of the time, of course, we have no idea why we are ill. This comes about as a consequence of our present inability to recognize many of the various negative emotions that we suppress in our minds and to “see,” with the eye of wisdom, the karmic deeds, usually committed in previous lives, which are responsible for such emotions and for our illnesses. These recognitions are the prerequisite for “seeing” directly the relationship between negative mental/emotional states, evil deeds, and illnesses. The practice of the Medicine Buddha will also eventually remove the obscurations of mind that block such recognitions. In the meantime, if we understand the general principle of karmic cause and effect and have confidence in the possibility of spiritual purification, we can practice the Medicine Buddha and attain results long before the dawning of such spiritual insight.

All of these benefits come about because the basis of all illness is evil deeds and the emotional defilements that give rise to them. The practice of the Medicine Buddha is one of the most profound ways of purifying such deeds and defilements and the karmic imprints that they leave in the psychosomatic system in the form of illness and compulsive behavior. In this way, the Medicine Buddha removes the causes of our illnesses and the illnesses themselves.



It is useful to understand how the Medicine Buddha fits into the teachings of the Buddha in general and into the vajrayana teachings of the Buddha in particular.

All of the Buddha’s teachings can be subsumed under the two categories of shamatha and vipashyana—calm abiding (mental tranquility) and spiritual insight. In the hinayana traditions of Buddhism the intention of the vipashyana teachings is to establish the lack of true existence of the indi-

vidual—sometimes called one-fold egolessness or the selflessness of the individual—and the lack of true existence of gross material phenomena or things. The intention of the vipashyana teachings of the first half of the mahayana teachings—contained in the second turning of the wheel of dharma—is to extend this understanding to include the lack of true existence of even the most subtle phenomena, including atoms and subatomic matter, energy, time, and all forms of consciousness itself. These two understandings together are referred to as two-fold egolessness or the selflessness of the individual and the selflessness of phenomena. Both of these formulations are included in the terms *shunyata* and emptiness.

The second half of the mahayana teachings—the third turning of the wheel of dharma—goes on to teach that emptiness is not simply a mere nothingness, nor merely the other side of the coin of interdependence, nor even simply a state beyond all conceptuality. The third turning teaches that this emptiness—while lacking any limiting characteristics, such as color, shape, size, location, substance, or gender, and being empty of all cognitive and emotional obscurations—is not empty of its own nature, the radiant clarity of mind, which includes all aspects of reality and which we refer to as clear light. In this empty radiant clarity inheres as one undifferentiable quality all the positive qualities that we normally conceptualize as being distinct from one another, such as intelligence, wisdom, compassion, skillful means, devotion, confidence, healing power, etc. Various manifestations of this quality arise out of the clear light nature in the form of the deities of the vajrayana tradition such as the Medicine Buddha, Vajrayogini, Tara, Vajradhara, Vajrasattva, or Chenrezig. And although it is said, from the standpoint of relative truth, that some, if not all, of these deities actually do exist as individual beings who can be supplicated, they exist as such because, and only because, the qualities that they embody were already inherent in the clear light nature, the buddha nature, of their own minds when they were confused sentient beings, just as they inherently exist today in the minds of all confused beings.

The essential nature of all deities can be better understood by understanding the essential nature of their body, speech, and mind. The body of the deity is the union of appearance and emptiness and emerges in the practitioner's experience when the experience of perceiver and perceived is purified. Of what is it purified? It is purified of grasping and fixation and of all the obscurations of mind that arise from grasping and fixation. It is

purified of the perceptual grasping or clinging to a self, and the perceptual fixating on everything perceived as being other to the self. In the words of Guru Rinpoche, “Perceiver and perceived when purified are the body of the deity, clear emptiness.”

The speech of the deity is the union of sound and emptiness. We all know that sound is intangible, but sounds without the experience of their emptiness have tremendous power to hurt us, to insult us, to exalt us, to exhilarate us, to fascinate us, etc. But when sounds and verbal communications are experienced as mere sounds, as the union of sound and emptiness, their power over us dissolves and we experience them with perfect equanimity, and thus without being bent out of shape in any way by them.

The mind of the deity is the union of awareness and emptiness. The experiences of the five sense consciousnesses and of the mental consciousness give rise to a constantly changing kaleidoscope of thoughts, mental afflictions, positive and negative feelings, sensations both felicitous and painful, and subtle dualistic perceptions which have the power, in the absence of the experiential understanding of their emptiness, to involve us in the most outrageous, outlandish, though sometimes very subtle, melodramas of the mind with their consequent suffering. But when the essential emptiness of all of these experiences is recognized, and one ceases to welcome and reject them, they dissolve or are self-liberated in their own place, the space of empty radiant awareness. All deities share these three aspects of the essential nature—which we also call mahamudra or dzogchen—and all practitioners who practice deity meditation with sufficient diligence and perseverance will come to realize this very same nature—the body, speech, and mind of the deity—in themselves as they become the deity.

At the same time, each deity has its own particular relative blessing. If one meditates on Chenrezig, ultimately one will realize mahamudra or dzogchen, and attain buddhahood, complete enlightenment. But in the short run, one will experience a strengthening of one’s loving kindness and compassion. If one meditates on Green Tara, ultimately one will attain enlightenment, but in the short run, one will experience freedom from fear and mental paralysis, the increased ability to accomplish one’s objectives, and an increase in active compassion. If one meditates on Manjushri, in the end one will attain enlightenment, but in the short run one will experience an increase in intelligence, insight, and wisdom. If one meditates on the Medicine Buddha, one will eventually attain enlightenment, but in the



meantime one will experience an increase in healing powers, both for oneself and others, and a decrease in physical and mental illness and suffering. Whether or not we have a very strong motive to attain buddhahood, we all desire these sorts of relative objectives, so deity meditation provides tremendous incentive for the practice of dharma.

And yet deity meditation is just another version of calm abiding and vipashyana (spiritual insight). When one meditates with concentration on the deity, when one visualizes the form, the attire, the jewelry, the hand-held implements, the throne, the seat, and other attributes of the deity, when one visualizes and meditates on the entourage, the general environment, and the internal mandala of a deity, and when one recites the deity's mantra, one is cultivating calm abiding; and when one realizes that all that one is meditating on is mere empty appearance, one is cultivating spiritual insight. But because meditation on the deity and on the union of the deity and one's own root lama also instantly connects one with the empty clear light nature—which is the essence of the deity, the guru, and the lineage, as well as being one's own essential nature—the power of this way of cultivating calm abiding to purify the mind of the practitioner of the mental obscurations blocking his or her spiritual insight is immeasurably greater than that of ordinary tranquility meditation on mundane objects like the breath or a flower or a candle flame. And since the forms upon which one is meditating are mere mental fabrications, their emptiness is more immediately apparent than, say, the emptiness of something like the Jefferson Memorial or the Washington Monument.

This is all possible because of the special quality of the vajrayana, which takes enlightenment as the path, rather than seeing it merely as a goal. Through the three processes of 1) abhisheka (empowerment, initiation), which ripens the mental continuum; 2) oral transmission conferred through the reading of sacred texts, which transmission supports one's practice; and 3) *tri*—the teachings, explanations, and pointing out instructions which liberate—one is connected directly to the enlightened state which is uncovered in us through these transmissions of the guru and the lineage. Thereafter, when one practices or merely brings to mind these teachings, transmissions, and empowerments, one is instantly reconnected with that compassionate primordial awareness, and this constant reconnecting then becomes one's path, bringing with it the rapid purification of mental defilements and the rapid accumulation of merit and wisdom. The recogni-

tion of this connection is the uncovering of one's own wisdom. If it goes unrecognized, it still exists in the practitioner's mental continuum as a seed, which will gradually ripen according to conditions, principal among which is perseverance in the practice.

The teachings on the Medicine Buddha that follow present the stages of practice of a Medicine Buddha sadhana that is commonly practiced in the Kagyu lineage of Tibetan Buddhism as well as in other lineages. It is not the only Medicine Buddha practice, but it is one that is relatively short and simple and can be practiced easily. In these teachings, Khenchen Thrangu Rinpoche elucidates not only the details of this particular practice, but also many of the basic principles of tantric theory and practice in general: the notion of deities and buddha realms, the principles of samayasattva and jnanasattva, the principles of emanating and gathering, the meaning of mantras, and the use of offerings to cultivate qualities, just to mention a few. For anyone engaged in any vajrayana practice, this teaching is very useful in understanding the foundations of tantric meditation and practice. Indeed, it is a garden of delightful elucidations.



Following his teachings on the stages of practice of the Medicine Buddha Sadhana, Khenchen Thrangu Rinpoche presents the teachings of the Buddha Shakyamuni on the aspirations of the Medicine Buddha, which are contained in the sutra called *The Twelve Great Aspirations of the Medicine Buddha*.

In these teachings, Rinpoche first explains the twelve great aspirations, including the benefits of hearing, recollecting, and reciting the name of the Medicine Buddha. Some of these aspirations are particular to the Buddhist path, but many of them are the same as those one finds reflected in progressive social and political movements and in the movements for human rights everywhere. These aspirations of the Medicine Buddha, which are recounted by the Buddha Shakyamuni, include amongst others the aspiration that all beings be free of physical defects and imperfections; that they be free from all illness and harm; that they be free generally of any kind of prejudice directed against them and of the difficulties that arise from such prejudice; that they be free specifically of racial prejudice, racial discrimination, and racial oppression; that they be free of conflict and warfare and from the false views and misunderstandings that lead to conflict and warfare; that

they be free of despotic and dictatorial rulers who oppress them with fear, torture, physical punishment, imprisonment, and deceit; that they be free of restrictions on their movements and on the free exercise of their speech; that they be free from hunger and thirst; and that they be free of all forms of poverty and the consequences of poverty. Anyone who feels greatly committed to these values and aspirations will in time find the practice of the Medicine Buddha of great value and consequence. Through perseverant practice, in time, the courage, strength, power, ability, and resources to accomplish such aspirations will arise increasingly in oneself and in others in one's environment. As it is said in the old East Indian proverb:

If you sow a thought, you will reap a deed.  
 If you sow a deed, you will reap a habit.  
 If you sow a habit, you will reap a character.  
 And if you sow a character, you will reap a destiny.

In addition, in this section Khenchen Thrangu Rinpoche gives a number of other extremely interesting and useful teachings: the meaning of deity in vajrayana Buddhism; the nature of the four maras and the transcendence of obstacles on the path; and the four qualities of a good intention. Rinpoche also describes and explains the mudras or ritual gestures employed in the sadhana.

In the third of these teachings, Thrangu Rinpoche also gives a particularly lucid description of the five wisdoms associated with the five Buddha families, describing them as five aspects of intrinsic awareness or as five aspects of the wisdom of a buddha.



The reader will notice that most of the deities in this particular sadhana are male. One should not conclude therefrom that this is typical of tantric mandalas. There are some mandalas—such as the mandalas of Arya Tara, Vajrayogini, and Chöd—in which the deities are all or nearly all female, others that are balanced, and others that vary slightly more one way or the other.



Readers who would like to find a dharma center in their area where this Medicine Buddha sadhana might be practiced are advised to go to

www.kagyu.com and www.kagyu.org and search their lists of satellite centers as a start. By searching the internet for “Medicine Buddha,” one will also find additional listings of such dharma centers and practice groups.

Readers are also reminded that all the supplementary information contained in various issues of *Shenpen Ösel* referred to in the backnotes of this book can be accessed free of charge at [www.shenpen-osel.org](http://www.shenpen-osel.org).



We would like to extend our heartfelt thanks to the great Khenchen Thrangu Rinpoche, whose extraordinary warmth, compassion, clarity and wisdom fill these pages. To find such a remarkable teacher, and to have the great good fortune to be able to serve him and receive from him such vast and profound teachings is rare indeed. There is not much need to elaborate further on his wonderful qualities and his selfless service to humanity and to other sentient beings, for his reputation now spreads across the face of the earth, as I am sure it also spreads throughout limitless buddha realms.

We would also like to thank the always ever more skillful translator, Lama Yeshe Gyamtso, for his many years of retreat practice in preparation for his present distinguished service as one of the world’s foremost translators of the buddhadharma in general and of the teachings of the Kagyu lineage in particular. And especially we would like to thank him for translating the teachings in these pages.

We would like also to thank the editorial staff of *Shenpen Ösel* for its invaluable assistance in the preparation of this text: Rose Peeps, Linda Lewis, and Mark Voss for their editorial assistance; Glen Avantaggio and Chris Payne for recording the teachings; Rose Peeps for transcribing them; and Don Lashley, Isaac Stephens, Jan Gunn, Marcia Glover, Daniel Talsky, Elizabeth Talsky, Zach Ferdana, Julia Hunt, Dan Miller, Mark Suver, Rose Mesec, Katia Roberts, Deirdre Elizabeth, Mark Voss and the many other members of Kagyu Shenpen Ösel Chöling who prepared the environment in which these teachings were given. We would like to thank our friends from the Seattle Shambhala Center and the Seattle Kagyu Thegsum Chöling for their assistance as well. And we would also like to thank Richard and Rose Peeps for providing the lama with a comfortable environment in which to live while preparing the manuscript of these teachings for publication.

Finally, we would like to thank the people at Snow Lion Publications—Sidney Piburn, Jeff Cox, and Richard Farkas—for their cheerful assistance in bringing these teachings to light.

—Lama Tashi Namgyal

PART ONE

---

THE MEDICINE BUDDHA  
SADHANA TEACHINGS



# 1 A PRACTICE THAT IS EXTREMELY EFFECTIVE IN THE REMOVAL OF SICKNESS

---



*In the Cascade Mountains in Washington, in June of 1999, the Very Venerable Khenchen Thrangu Rinpoche led an eight-day retreat to teach the Medicine Buddha Sadhana and Medicine Buddha Sutra. Rinpoche gave the teachings in Tibetan; they were orally translated by Lama Yeshe Gyamtso. The following is an edited transcript.*

I WOULD LIKE TO BEGIN by welcoming all of you here today and thanking you all for coming. I am delighted to have this opportunity to meet with you, to study the Medicine Buddha practice together with you, and to talk with you about dharma. As usual, we are going to begin by reciting the lineage supplication. While doing so, please generate strong devotion for the root guru and the other gurus of the lineage, such as Vajradhara, Tilopa, Naropa, and so forth.

[Recitation of lineage supplication.]

First, in order to listen to the teachings properly, please generate the attitude of bodhicitta, which is necessary for the practice of dharma in general, and particularly for the practice of something like the Medicine Buddha. While listening to the teachings, please think that you are listening to them and will practice them in order to be of the greatest possible benefit to all beings.

We might think that there is something of a contradiction between the motivation with which we might practice the Medicine Buddha and the motivation of bodhicitta. We might think that fundamentally we are practicing the Medicine Buddha in order to benefit our own bodies, whereas the motivation of bodhicitta is the wish to benefit all beings. But in fact



there is no contradiction, because, in order to be effective in benefiting other beings, we need to accomplish an excellent samadhi or meditative absorption; and in order to accomplish that, together with the insight and realization that it brings, we need to have a stable practice. In order to have a stable and profound practice, we need to be physically and mentally healthy or comfortable, because by being comfortable in our body, and comfortable in our mind, we will be free of obstacles to diligence in practice and free of obstacles to the cultivation of meditative absorption. So therefore, we are practicing the Medicine Buddha in order to attain states of mental and physical health or balance, not merely for our own benefit, but for the benefit of others as well.

There is, therefore, no contradiction between the motivation you might have for practicing the Medicine Buddha and your motivation for practicing dharma in general. We practice dharma in order to attain buddhahood, and we practice the Medicine Buddha in order to attain that same goal. We may be practicing it specifically in order to attain a state of mental and physical health in this life, but when we practice the Medicine Buddha in this way, we are not really limiting our motivation to our attainment of mental and physical health, because by means of that practice we can accomplish great benefit for ourselves and others; and we can successfully complete our practice of dharma in the sense of attaining buddhahood.

Furthermore, by practicing the Medicine Buddha, we not only achieve health in this life but we cause ourselves to be blessed by the Medicine Buddha throughout all future lives as well. And through cultivating the stages of the practice of the Medicine Buddha—the generation stage and the completion stage—we not only achieve benefit for ourselves, but we are actually cultivating the potential to benefit others. And by doing these practices we actually bless the environment and all the beings in that environment.

The practice of the Medicine Buddha is fundamentally a mental practice, a practice of meditation. Now, you might wonder how something you are doing primarily with your mind could affect your body. How could practicing the Medicine Buddha preserve your physical health or alleviate physical sickness? You might think that the mind and body are fundamentally unrelated, and that therefore the practice of meditation cannot affect our bodies. In fact, our bodies and minds are extremely interrelated. The body supports or is the container for our mind, but the body is also based upon or supported by the mind. Therefore, the practice of meditation does

affect your body and your physical state. Specifically, in the meditation practice of the Medicine Buddha, in addition to visualizing the Medicine Buddha in front of you, you are also visualizing your own body as the body of the Medicine Buddha. These and other visualizations, and the recitation of the mantra and so forth, which initially or primarily seem only to affect the mind, do, therefore, eventually affect the body as well.

We practice fundamentally with our minds, but this practice does affect and benefit both the mind and the body. As is generally taught, what we identify as our mind consists of eight different consciousnesses, or functions of consciousness. These arise the way they do because of the connection between body and mind. For example, one of the eight consciousnesses is the eye consciousness, the visual consciousness. This consciousness is a function of three things: its object, which is visible forms; its organic support, which is the eye as an organ of vision; and the consciousness, which is the mind functioning in connection with these two. Now, the point of this is that the visual consciousness never arises in isolation from an object and an organic support. It arises *because* the organic support is capable of detecting its appropriate object—in this case, visible form. Therefore, because the object, the organ, and the consciousness are so intimately interrelated or interconnected, the transformation of any one of these will necessarily affect the aspect or manner of the other two. Therefore, just as when an object is changed, that affects the visual consciousness of that object in dependence upon the organ; and when the organ is changed, that affects the visual consciousness and therefore the perceived objects; in the same way, when the consciousness is transformed, as it is through the practice of meditation, that affects the perception of objects and the organic support itself.

In the same way, our other senses arise as consciousnesses in connection with their objects and their organic supports. Based upon the organ of the ear, there arises what is called the ear consciousness or hearing, which experiences its object, audible sounds. In dependence upon the organic support of the nose, there arises the nose consciousness, which detects smells. In dependence upon the organ of the tongue, there arises the tongue consciousness, which detects tastes. And in dependence on the organic support of the body and the nerves of the body, there arises the body consciousness, which detects or experiences tactile sensations. All of these consciousnesses arise or are generated by the presence of an object which is encountered by

its appropriate organ. Sometimes they arise based upon the organ itself experiencing the sensation, but in any case, the sensations of the five senses that we experience are functions of the organs and the objects experienced by these organs, which generate appropriate consciousnesses. Because the consciousness pervades the experience of its object and the experience of the organ itself, if the consciousness is transformed, or one's mode of experience of consciousness is transformed, into pure appearance, then the appearances of the objects, and also of the organs themselves, will become pure or sacred. It is in this way that the practice of this form of meditation can benefit not only your mind but also your body.

In addition to the five sense consciousnesses, the sixth consciousness, which is the mental consciousness, also arises in connection with physical experience. Now, according to the abhidharma, the mental consciousness does not rely exclusively upon a specific physical organ support the way the five sense consciousnesses do. The condition that leads to the arising of the mental consciousness is the previous moment of that consciousness itself. Generally speaking, this arises to some extent on the impressions produced by the physical experience of the senses. So, indirectly, we could say that the organ support for the mental consciousness is the momentum of all of the consciousnesses connected with sense experience. But the mental consciousness itself is that which generates and experiences all of the varieties of emotion and thought that we know—attachment, aversion, bewilderment, apathy, pride, jealousy, feelings of joy and delight, feelings of sadness, feelings of faith and compassion, etc.—all of these different emotional states and all of the thoughts connected with them are varieties of experiences of the sixth or mental consciousness. Now, as these various thoughts and emotions pass through our minds, they transform and influence that consciousness itself. But not only that—they also affect the five sense consciousnesses. For example, when you are very sad and you look at something, you will perceive it as sad, or as unpleasant. If you look at the identical object when you are happy, you will see the same thing as pleasant. And if you look at it when you are angry, you will see, again, the same object as entirely different. This is a very simple example of how the mental consciousness in particular and our mind in general affects our experience of sense objects and the sense consciousnesses and the sense organs themselves.

Of the eight consciousnesses, the most evident in our experience are

these six consciousnesses, or six functions: the five sense consciousnesses and the mental consciousness. But there are, in addition to these, two other functions of mind, which are called stable or underlying consciousnesses or functions. These are the seventh consciousness, which is the subtle mental affliction, and the eighth consciousness, which is called the all-basis. The seventh consciousness, the consciousness which is the root of mental affliction, refers to the subtle, fundamental misapprehension of an existent self, the fixation on a self. This fixation is itself the root of samsara. It is not, however, regarded as an unvirtuous or negative thing in itself. It is morally neutral. But because it is ignorance and the basis of further ignorance, it is regarded as the most fundamental and important thing to be abandoned or relinquished. In fact, we could say that the teachings of buddhadharma are mainly about how to abandon this fixation on self. It is for that reason that there is so much emphasis in buddhadharma on the meditations on selflessness, emptiness, and so forth. Through these meditations one can realize selflessness, through which one relinquishes the kleshas, through which one attains liberation.

The meditation upon selflessness, however, and specifically the meditation upon the lack of true existence of the personal self,<sup>1</sup> does not consist of trying to imagine or convince yourself that you are nothing whatsoever. It is done, especially in the visualization practices of the generation stage of tantra, by replacing your solid sense of your own existence with something else. In the case of the Medicine Buddha practice, you relinquish the thought, “I am me, I am the person I think I am,” and replace it with the thought, “I am the Medicine Buddha.” The primary technique in the meditation consists of imagining yourself to be the Medicine Buddha, conceiving of yourself as the Medicine Buddha. By replacing the thought of yourself as yourself with the thought of yourself as the Medicine Buddha, you gradually counteract and remove the fixation on your personal self. And as that fixation is removed, the power of the seventh consciousness is reduced. And as it is reduced, the kleshas or mental afflictions are gradually weakened, which causes you to experience greater and greater well-being in both body and mind.

The eighth consciousness is the all-basis consciousness, so called because it is the ground on which habits, both good and bad, accrue. We experience things the way we do because of the habits we have accumulated. As we accumulate good habits we have positive experiences, and as

we accumulate bad habits we have negative experiences. The fundamental reason for our immersion in samsara is the accumulation of bad habits, some more virulent than others. The process of getting ourselves out of samsara consists of gradually weakening the bad habits and strengthening the good habits. For example, when we begin to practice, we have no confidence whatsoever that we really are the Medicine Buddha. We have a strong negative habit of regarding ourselves as whomever we regard ourselves to be. But through cultivating the technique and attitude of regarding ourselves as possessing the body, the speech, the mind, the qualities, and the blessings of the Medicine Buddha, then these natural qualities within us will increase.

The main practice in vajrayana consists of the generation stage, the cultivation of the practice of regarding oneself as a deity. From an ordinary point of view, we might regard this as useless. We would think, "Well, I am not a deity. What use is there in my pretending to be a deity?" But in fact, the root of samsara is the habit of impure perception. By regarding oneself as a deity one gradually purifies, weakens, and removes that habit and replaces it with the positive habit of pure perception. It is for this reason that the meditation upon oneself as a deity is considered so important.

In most religious traditions, the deities of that tradition, when they are related to or imagined, are imagined in front of one. Then, visualizing the deity or deities as being present in front of one, one prays to them, and by doing so hopefully one receives their blessing, which benefits one in some way. In the vajrayana tradition, however, we regard the blessing and the power and the qualities of the deities as being innate, as being within one's own mind. This innate presence of the wisdom and blessings of the deities in our own minds is called the unity of the expanse and wisdom, or the unity of space and wisdom. Of course, it is true that when we look at our minds, we have mental afflictions, we have thoughts, we have all kinds of suffering and problems. But at the same time we always have the innate potential to transcend these. And the reason why we have this innate potential is that the nature of the mind and the nature of everything that arises in the mind is emptiness. Regardless of what is passing through your mind, your mind is always a boundless space of emptiness.

The innate potential of our minds lies in the very fact that our minds are empty. Because our minds are empty, all of the problems and sufferings and defects that arise in our minds can be removed or purified, because

they too are empty. This emptiness of the mind is not absolute nothingness; it is not a static or dead or neutral emptiness, because, while emptiness is indeed the nature of the mind, the nature of that emptiness is wisdom—it is the innate potential for the arising of all qualities. In Buddhist scriptures this innate potential is called buddha nature.

Now, the process of working with our life situation through practice in tantric Buddhism consists first of acknowledging that one's own basic nature is that potential, that buddha nature, and then of meditating upon its presence within one by regarding oneself as a deity. The form of the deity is the embodiment or expression of that potential, that unity of emptiness and wisdom, within one. It is through regarding oneself as the deity that defects are gradually eradicated and qualities gradually revealed. The primary technique of visualization is to visualize ourselves as the deity, because the potential to transcend our problems is innate rather than external to us. Therefore, our main practice in meditation upon deities is the self-generation of the deity, visualizing oneself as the deity.

If you ask is this the only way in which we work with deities, the answer is no. We also visualize deities in front of us. Now, in the common tradition<sup>2</sup> of Buddhism, as is found in the scriptures of the Theravadin tradition and so on—which I cannot read in the Pali but have read in Tibetan translation—we find an extensive presentation by the Buddha that there is no external deity to be relied upon, that the path consists fundamentally of eradicating one's own kleshas, thereby eventually attaining the state of an arhat or arhati without remainder. Thus in the sutras of the common vehicle, the state of liberation is presented as freedom from all kleshas, limitations, and attachment, but not particularly as an abiding wisdom.

However, in the sutras of the mahayana, and especially in the teachings of the vajrayana, it is clearly taught that once someone attains full liberation and buddhahood, they do not become nothing. The process of purification finally reveals, and therefore there remains, an enduring wisdom that is of the nature of nonconceptual compassion. The attainment of buddhahood, the path through which it is attained, really begins with the generation of bodhicitta, which is the intention to attain liberation so that one can bring all beings to the same state. Because that is the motivation with which the path is begun, when the result, which is buddhahood, is attained, the result of that path is naturally spontaneous, impartial, and nonconceptual compassion. Therefore, we regard buddhas as having an

awareness that is responsive to the needs of beings, and therefore as being open and accessible to our prayers and supplication. For that reason, while we primarily visualize ourselves as deities, we also visualize the deities as present in front of us.

We supplement the visualization of ourselves as the deity with visualizations such as imagining the actual wisdom deities themselves dissolving into ourselves again and again, by means of which we receive their blessing. Sometimes we visualize the deity in front of us, separate from ourselves, thinking that rays of light from the deity's heart engulf and pervade us, granting the blessing of the deity. And sometimes we visualize that rays of light, which embody the blessing of that deity in front of us, strike all beings, removing their obstacles, increasing their longevity, wisdom, and so on. All of these visualizations are methods by which we arouse the compassion of all buddhas and cause their blessings to enter into ourselves and others.

All the yidams and deities used in meditation have the same fundamental nature and are utterly pure. Nevertheless they have different appearances, which reflect the different activities that they embody and engage in. These different activities are primarily determined by the individual aspirations they made at the time of their initial generation of bodhicitta. For example, in the case of the Medicine Buddha, there is a specific set of aspirations, as there is in the case of the bodhisattva Avalokiteshvara or the bodhisattva Arya Tara. It is primarily for this reason that deities manifest in their varied appearances— sometimes appearing as male, in which case they primarily embody upaya or method; sometimes appearing as female, in which case they primarily embody prajna or wisdom; sometimes appearing as peaceful, sometimes appearing as wrathful, and so on. In the case of the Medicine Buddha, at the time of his initial generation of bodhicitta— with which act he began the path that culminated in his attainment of buddhahood—his primary motivation was to remove all suffering of beings in general, but especially to remove the physical and mental sufferings of beings caused through the imbalance of the elements, which we know of as mental and physical illness. This was his primary motivation or aspiration throughout the three periods of innumerable eons during which he gathered the accumulations of merit and wisdom that culminated in his attainment of buddhahood as the Medicine Buddha. Therefore, as the Medicine Buddha, he possesses extraordinary ability and engages in ex-

traordinary activity to pacify sickness. Whether you access this activity through visualizing yourself as the Medicine Buddha, or through arousing the compassion and activity of the Medicine Buddha as conceived of as external to yourself, in either case, the practice of the Medicine Buddha is supremely effective in the removal of sickness.

The practice of the Medicine Buddha comes primarily from the uncommon tradition of the vajrayana, which means that the transmission of the practice is done using three processes called the empowerment, which ripens; the instruction, which frees; and the reading transmission, which supports. The function of empowerment, the formal ceremony or ritual of empowerment, is to introduce you to the practice and to the process of visualization and so forth, which will make up the practice. The function of the instruction, which frees, is to give you complete access to the practice by means of telling you literally how to do it—what you do with your body, what you say with your speech, and what you think with your mind. The function of the reading transmission, which supports, is to transmit the blessing of the lineage of the practice which serves to consecrate or bless your practice in the form of sound. Because the lineage has been transmitted as the sound of the words of its transmission, when the reading transmission is given to you, you simply listen to the sound and think that by doing so you receive the blessing of the lineage.

Today I will give the reading transmission, the *lung*, for the Medicine Buddha practice. The empowerment for the practice, I will give on Sunday. With regard to the empowerment, you should understand that the Medicine Buddha practice is not solely a vajrayana practice. Like the practice of mahamudra, it is a combination of vajrayana [tantra] and sutra. For example, while we could say that mahamudra is primarily taught in the vajrayana, it is also found in certain sutras, such as the *Samadhiraja Sutra*, and so forth. In the same way, this practice of the Medicine Buddha is a combination of what the Buddha taught about the Medicine Buddha in the sutras of the Medicine Buddha and in various tantras. Because it is connected with vajrayana, it is most appropriate to receive the empowerment to enhance the practice; but because it is also connected with the sutras, it is acceptable to do the practice without the empowerment as well. As you are receiving the reading transmission today, there is no particular visualization you need to do. Maintain the motivation of bodhicitta for receiving the transmission, and think that simply by hearing the sounds of



the words as I read them you receive the transmission or blessing of the lineage of this practice.

[Rinpoche gives the reading transmission.]

To give you a support for your visualization of the Medicine Buddha when doing the practice, I am going to give each of you a small image of the Medicine Buddha. So please, in order to receive it, come up.

[Rinpoche hands out cards.]

## 2 THE GREAT KING OF MEDICINE IS ACTIVE IN PACIFYING THE SUFFERING OF BEINGS

---



**W**E ARE NOW GOING TO START going through the text itself, the liturgy for the practice, so that you will understand how to do it. As you will have noticed, the first part of the Medicine Buddha practice is the lineage supplication, which consists of the supplication of the principal Medicine Buddha, the seven accompanying Medicine Buddhas, the sixteen bodhisattvas, and finally, the holders and propagators of the teachings of the Medicine Buddha. The purpose of reciting this supplication at the beginning of the practice is to invoke and receive at the very beginning of the practice the blessing of the Medicine Buddha through the power of your faith in and devotion to the deity and to the lineage of this teaching.

The supplication begins with one line in the language of Sanskrit:

### **NAMO BEKENDZE MAHA RADZAYE**

This means, “Homage to the great king of medicine.” The initial homage to the Medicine Buddha as the great king of medicine is done in Sanskrit because the source of the teachings of the vajrayana in particular, and of the buddhadharma in general—the original sutra and tantra teachings of the Buddha Shakyamuni—were given primarily in Sanskrit. Moreover, the mahasiddhas, bodhisattvas, and shravakas of India also primarily used Sanskrit as their dharma language. Therefore, in order to maintain a connection with the source of the tradition, and because the Sanskrit language itself is held to bear great blessing, the initial supplication is made in Sanskrit, after which follows the main body of the supplication of the Medicine Buddha in Tibetan.

The first stanza of the supplication is addressed to the principal Medicine Buddha, and is based on the Buddha Shakyamuni’s presentation of the Medicine Buddha’s initial motivation for his path and the aspirations he

made in connection therewith, as recorded in the sutras on the Medicine Buddha.<sup>3</sup>

**You are endowed with an oceanic treasury of qualities and merit;  
By the blessing of your inconceivable compassion  
You calm the suffering and torment of sentient beings.  
I supplicate you, Light of Lapis Lazuli.**

The meaning of the stanza is that, because of the quality and special nature of his initial motivation and ensuing aspirations, the Medicine Buddha very quickly accumulated vast amounts of merit, as a result of which, while on the path and finally at the time of fruition or buddhahood, he came to embody a vast treasury of qualities associated with awakening. Therefore, because of his initial compassionate motivation and because of the qualities of his awakening, he possesses inconceivable blessing, by virtue of which, in accordance with his aspiration and motivation, he is active in pacifying the sufferings of beings. So in chanting the beginning of the supplication, you mention him by name, referring to him as the Light of Vaidurya.

The second stanza is also addressed to the Medicine Buddha, and it continues from the presentation in the first. In the first stanza you were essentially praising the fact that he embodies extraordinary merit and qualities as a result of his extraordinary motivation and aspirations. Upon his initial generation of bodhicitta the Medicine Buddha made twelve particular aspirations. In connection with these, the benefits of recollecting the name of the Medicine Buddha begin to be specified in the second stanza.

**Those bound by very intense greed  
Are born in the hungry ghost realm.  
If they hear your name, they are born human and take delight in  
generosity.  
I supplicate you, victorious Menla.**

Recollection of the name means keeping the name of the Medicine Buddha in mind by having an attitude of faith and devotion to the Medicine Buddha. The stanza says that even someone who, as a result of intense greed, is destined to be reborn as a preta or hungry ghost, if such a person

hears the name of the Medicine Buddha, they will be reborn as a human being and will delight in generosity. In that way, you supplicate the Medicine Buddha by referring to the power or blessing of his name.

The next stanza gives a second benefit of recollecting and hearing the name of the Medicine Buddha.

**Violating morality and abusing others,  
Beings are born in the hell realms.  
Hearing your name, they are said to be born in the higher realms.  
I supplicate you, King of Medicine.**

Those who violate moral commitments and who actively harm or abuse others will be reborn in the hell realms. This refers to those who have no interest in maintaining the dharma commitments they have undertaken, who have no interest in benefiting others, and who are only interested in harming them. But if even such a person hears the name of the Medicine Buddha, they will be reborn in higher realms. By simply hearing the name of the Medicine Buddha, their inherent capacity for virtue will be awakened and they will gradually become interested in acting appropriately and benefiting others. Changing their course of action, they will not be reborn in a lower realm.

The next stanza describes a third benefit of hearing or recollecting the name of the Medicine Buddha.

**Whoever by repeated dissension and slander  
Creates serious schisms and takes life,  
Hearing your name, they cannot harm others.  
I supplicate you, King of Medicine.**

Those who are naturally jealous, competitive, and arrogant, and as a result, find themselves always trying to produce dissension; who, when seeing that others are friendly and harmonious, automatically try to create discord; who create schisms where there is harmony and discord even to the point where it leads to loss either of their own life or the lives of others; even someone with this jealous, competitive, and arrogant nature—if they hear the name of the Medicine Buddha, will be unable to cause harm. Unable to cause harm means that their mindset and their attitudes will

change. They will cease to be jealous, cease to be arrogant, and will gradually find themselves unwilling and therefore unable to intentionally bring this kind of harm to others.

There are two sutras principally concerned with the Medicine Buddha. One is the *Sutra of the Medicine Buddha*, which is concerned with the principal Medicine Buddha, his twelve aspirations, and the benefits of recollecting his name. The second is the *Sutra of the Eight Medicine Buddhas*, or the *Sutra of the Eight Medicine Buddha Brothers*. The medicine buddhas referred to in this sutra are the previously mentioned principal one and seven others who form his retinue. The next stanza in the supplication is concerned with the other seven medicine buddhas. They each have their own individual aspirations. Some of them have made eight aspirations; some have made four. And the recollection of their names brings benefits similar to those brought about by the recollection of the name of the principal Medicine Buddha.

**Excellent Name, Appearance of Stainless Fine Gold,  
Glorious Supreme One Free of Misery, Resounding Dharma Melody,  
King of Direct Knowledge, King of Melody,  
And King of Shakyas, I supplicate you all.**

These seven buddhas are named Tshen Lek, or Excellent Name; Ser Zang Dri Me Nangwa, or Appearance of Stainless Fine Gold; Nya Ngen Me Chok Pal, Glorious Supreme One Free of Misery; Chö Drak Yang, Resounding Dharma Melody; Ngön Khyen Gyalpo, King of Direct Knowledge; Dra Yang Gyalpo, King of Melody; and Shakya Gyalpo, King of the Shakyas.

The next stanza is a supplication to the other deities in the mandala of the Medicine Buddha. These are not listed in their entirety, but each set of deities is mentioned briefly and a few of the names of each set are mentioned.

**Manjushri, Kyabdröl, Vajrapani,  
Brahma, Indra, the Four Kings of the Four Directions,  
The twelve great Yaksha chiefs, and so forth,  
I supplicate you, entire and perfect mandala.**

The first class of deities after the eight medicine buddhas are the sixteen bodhisattvas. Here three of them are mentioned: Manjushri, Kyabdröl, and

Vajrapani. The next class are the ten protectors of the world, or of the directions, of whom two are mentioned, Brahma and Indra. The next class are the four great kings of the four directions, who are also protectors, not mentioned here by their individual names. Finally there are the twelve yaksha chieftains, or yaksha generals, and they too are just mentioned as a class. The last line of the stanza indicates that this is the supplication of the entire mandala of the Medicine Buddha.

Up to this point you have supplicated the principal Medicine Buddha and his retinue, and in doing so have supplicated the body of the Medicine Buddha and the mind or the emanations of the Medicine Buddha. What remains is to supplicate the speech of the Medicine Buddha; having supplicated the buddhas and bodhisattvas of the mandala, you next supplicate the dharma.

**The Sutra of the Seven Tathagatas' Aspirations,  
And the Sutra of the Medicine Buddha,  
The treatise by the great abbot Shantarakshita, and so forth,  
I supplicate all the volumes of the genuine dharma.**

Mentioned first are the two sutras taught by the Buddha Shakyamuni about the Medicine Buddha: the *Sutra of the Aspirations of the Seven Tathagathas*, which means the seven medicine buddhas in the retinue, and the *Sutra of the Medicine Buddha*, which is the principal medicine buddha. Mentioned in the same stanza are the shastras,<sup>4</sup> which also form part of the scriptural source for the Medicine Buddha tradition. These are referred to by mentioning as an example the treatise of the great abbot Shantarakshita, which is one of the oldest or original sources of the Medicine Buddha practice. And then you chant, "I supplicate the genuine dharma in the form of books." The reason for this is that in general, of course, dharma exists in the form of the written word. But it has a special significance in the case of this mandala. The self-generation—the form of the Medicine Buddha with which you identify your own body—is the Medicine Buddha alone, without retinue. But the front visualization is the Medicine Buddha surrounded by all the rest of the mandala. The first circle of the mandala immediately surrounding him consists of the other seven medicine buddhas and the volumes of the dharma as the eighth member of the retinue. During this supplication you visualize the Medicine Buddha seated in the sky in front

of you in the center of a fully opened eight-petaled lotus and surrounding him, on each of the seven petals other than the one directly in front of him, the seven other medicine buddhas. On the lotus petal directly in front of the principal Medicine Buddha, you visualize the volumes of the dharma, the sutras, and so forth, that present his practice.

The next stanza of the supplication supplicates the lineage of this practice.

**Bodhisattva Shantarakshita, Trisong Deutsen, and others,  
Translators, scholars, kings, ministers, bodhisattvas,  
And all genuine lamas of the lineage,  
Powerful One of the Dharma, and others, I supplicate you.**

First mentioned are those who first brought this tradition of the Medicine Buddha from India to Tibet. Where it says bodhisattva, it means the abbot Shantarakshita, who bestowed this teaching on many students, including the Tibetan dharma king Trisong Deutsen, who is mentioned next. Then supplicated are all of the translators of Tibet and the panditas of India who enabled this tradition to spread to Tibet through translating it, teaching it, explaining it, and so on. Next are supplicated all of the other inheritors of this tradition, bodhisattvas who took the form of dharma kings, ministers and so on. Finally, all the gurus of the lineage of this practice are supplicated, and in particular one's own root guru. This supplication was composed, and the practice in general was edited, by the learned and accomplished master Karma Chagmey Rinpoche, and so he supplicates his own root guru, Chökyi Wangchuk, by name here.

The final stanza of the supplication dedicates the power of the supplication to the ends that you wish to achieve.

**Through the blessing of this supplication,  
May the diverse temporal diseases and dangers of this life be stilled.  
At death, may all fear of the lower realms be calmed.  
Grant your blessing that afterwards we are born in Sukhavati.**

The stanza reads, “Through the blessing of supplicating in this way,”—which means by the blessing of supplicating the Medicine Buddha, his retinue of buddhas, bodhisattvas, and protectors, and all the teachers of the

lineage, with devotion—“in the short run may the various diseases, dangers, and fears be pacified, and at the time of death, after all fear of being reborn in the lower realms has been pacified, grant your blessing that we may be born in Sukhavati, the land of great happiness and great bliss.” You are expressing your wish here to be protected from suffering both in the short term and in the long term. In the short term you are asking to be protected from sickness and various other dangers—from whatever can go wrong—in this life. In the long term, you are asking that you not be reborn in lower states or in lower realms, and that, once the danger and fear of being reborn in the lower realms have been transcended, you may achieve rebirth in Sukhavati, the realm of Amitabha. That completes the lineage supplication.

After the lineage supplication comes the taking of refuge and the generation of bodhicitta, which, as necessary preliminaries, are always recited at the beginning of any vajrayana practice. Each has a specific function. The function of taking refuge is to prevent your practice from becoming an incorrect path. The function of generating bodhicitta is to prevent your practice from becoming an inferior path. In the case of this practice, each of these aspects—refuge and bodhicitta—occupies two lines of a four-line stanza.

**NAMO to the sources of refuge, the three jewels  
And the three roots, I go for refuge.**

The first line of the refuge identifies the sources of refuge, and they are two: the three jewels and the three roots. The three jewels, which are the common sources of refuge,<sup>5</sup> are the Buddha, in whom one takes refuge by accepting him as a teacher and an example; the dharma, in which one takes refuge by accepting it as a path; and the sangha, in which one takes refuge by accepting the sangha as companions and guides on that path. Identifying the three jewels as the initial source of refuge indicates that by taking refuge in them you are freeing yourself from the possibility of an incorrect path.

Then there are the uncommon sources of refuge, which are unique to vajrayana. They are known as the three roots: the gurus, who are the root of blessing; the yidams or deities, who are the root of attainment; and the dharmapalas, or dharma protectors, who are the root of activity. First of



these are the gurus, who are the root of blessing. Blessing refers to the power of dharma—that which in dharma is actually effective, that actually brings the result of dharma. Obviously in practicing we need that effectiveness—that power or blessing of dharma—to enter into us. The original source of this blessing, of course, is the Buddha, who first taught the dharma in this particular historical period. Unfortunately, we do not have the ability in this life to meet the Buddha or hear the Buddha's speech directly. But we do have the opportunity to practice his teachings and to attain the same result we could have attained had we met the Buddha, because the essence of his teachings—and therefore the blessing or effectiveness of his teachings—has been passed down through the lineage, beginning with the Buddha himself and culminating with our own personal teacher or root guru. Therefore, the first source of refuge in the vajrayana are root and lineage gurus—and, especially the root guru—who are the source of the blessing of dharma.

The second source of refuge in the vajrayana, the second root, are the yidams, the deities, who are the sources of attainment or siddhi. While the guru is the source of the blessing and effectiveness of dharma, the guru cannot simply hand you the result or attainment of dharma practice. The source or root of that attainment is your practice. And your practice is embodied by the yidam or deity which is the basis of that practice. This means that you attain the result of dharma practice through engaging in the techniques of visualizing the body of the deity and engaging in the generation and completion stage practices which are associated with that deity. In this specific instance, the yidam is the Medicine Buddha. By identifying with the body of the Medicine Buddha, you attain the result, the attainments or siddhis, associated with the Medicine Buddha, which include the pacification of sickness and other sufferings.<sup>6</sup> The reason why these deities are referred to as *yidams*, which literally means mental commitment, is that in order to practice dharma you have to have a clear direction and strong focus in the technique and method of practice. The idea of yidam is that a certain practice and, in the case of vajrayana a certain deity, is identified by you as that practice to which you commit yourself, that direction in practice which you will take. A yidam is the deity about which you think, "I will practice this. I will come to attain this result."

The third vajrayana source of refuge, the third root, are the dharmapalas, the protectors, who are the root of activity. Activity here means the protec-

tion of your practice from obstacles, so that you can successfully complete it and bring it to the appropriate result, so that you will be able to benefit others effectively in a way that is in accordance with the practice. In order to achieve these ends you need this blessing of activity or protection. This is gained chiefly from specific bodhisattvas who take the form of protectors, and, in certain cases, dakinis. In the specific case of the Medicine Buddha, when the Buddha taught the Medicine Buddha sutras, there were certain deities who committed themselves to protecting these teachings and all practitioners of these teachings, including even those who merely recollect the name of the Medicine Buddha. These protector deities are represented in the mandala, and they include the twelve Yaksha chieftains, the four great kings, the ten protectors of the world, and so on. In this way, you are taking refuge by accepting the Buddha as a teacher; his teachings, the dharma, as a path; the sangha as companions and guides on that path; and you are taking refuge by requesting the blessings of the gurus, attainment through the yidam, and the protection of the dharmapalas and dakinis. That is the taking of refuge, which serves to protect your practice from becoming an incorrect path.

Next comes the generation of bodhicitta, which serves to protect your practice from becoming an inferior path.

**To establish all beings in buddhahood,  
I awaken a mind of supreme enlightenment.**

It is true, of course, that our basic motivation for practicing is that we all wish to be free from suffering. This wish to be free from suffering is good. But it is often somewhat limited, which is to say that it is somewhat selfish, and it is often somewhat petty or small-minded in scope. The idea behind generating bodhicitta is to recollect that all beings without exception wish to be happy in exactly the same way and to exactly the same degree as we do. If you bring that to mind fully, then your aspiration to attain freedom for yourself will expand and become an aspiration to bring all beings to that same freedom. This aspiration has to be a long-term aspiration. It is not enough simply to aspire to free beings from a certain type of suffering, or to free them from the suffering they are undergoing now, or to free them from this year's suffering. For it to be the aspiration of bodhicitta, which is the fullest and most extensive motivation, you must have the atti-

tude of wishing to establish beings in a state that will permanently free them from all suffering. Now, the only way that you can actually make beings permanently happy is to bring them to a state of full awakening, to buddhahood. So ultimately, the only way to protect beings from suffering is to establish them all in awakening, because they simply will not be happy until they have attained it. If you understand this—that all beings wish to be happy just as much as we do and that none of us can be happy until we attain awakening—then you will naturally give rise to bodhicitta, which is the intention to bring each and every being to a state of full and perfect awakening. Bodhicitta also includes within it, of course, the aspiration to be of any other assistance you can to beings along the way to accomplishing that ultimate goal. So it is not limited to any specific form of assistance.

If bodhicitta has been genuinely generated, then your motivation for practice will be reflected in your thinking, “I am practicing in order to bring all beings to awakening; I am not practicing merely because I am afraid of my own suffering or because I wish to protect a few others from suffering or because I wish to protect all others from a few types of suffering.” In that way your motivation for the practice of the Medicine Buddha becomes bodhicitta, which is the attitude: “In order to bring all beings to a state of buddhahood I must first attain the state of the Medicine Buddha in order to be able to do so effectively, because in my present state I cannot effectively protect or benefit others.”

The refuge and the generation of bodhicitta are followed by the blessing or consecration of the place and the materials of practice.

**From the expanse of primordial purity come forth  
Clouds of offerings filling the earth and sky  
With mandalas, articles of royalty, and goddesses.  
May they never be exhausted. PUD DZA HO.**

The reason for this stage of the practice is that at any given moment we have an impure perception<sup>7</sup> of and an impure attitude towards ourselves, towards others, and towards the environment as a whole. The more we invest in that impure perception or attitude—in the perception of things as impure—the worse our situation will become, and the more attachment and aversion and apathy we will find ourselves generating. The remedy for

this is simply to change our attitude and to regard things as pure. Initially, of course, this takes some conscious effort. But by regarding things as pure, you will gradually start to perceive things as pure, which will purify the habitual tendency to perceive them as impure.

At this point the liturgy reads, “Clouds of offerings emanated from the primordially pure expanse fill the sky and the earth.” You imagine that the place in which you are practicing is a completely pure realm filled with every imaginable type of pleasant offering substance. This realm and these offerings, although you are imagining them, are not imaginary. They have been there from the very beginning, which is why it says in the liturgy “emanated from the primordially pure expanse.” From the very beginning, this is how things actually are, how things actually have been. You are not creating them by imagining them, nor are you fooling yourselves by imagining them. It is rather that our present mode of perception is like being in the midst of a nightmare from which we hope to wake up; and when we wake up from it, we will see things as they are. It is important to understand that you are imagining things to be what in fact they really are.

The offering substances contained in this pure realm include such things as offering mandalas, the seven articles of royalty, and various other kinds of offerings that are specified in the liturgy, together with gods and goddesses who present them, and so on. All of these offerings are inexhaustible; they are unlimited in amount, they are perfect in quality, they do not just disappear, and they never get used up. This section is both the consecration of the offerings and the consecration of the place of practice. And the attitude with which this is done is that you are starting to purify your otherwise impure perception of your environment—of your body, of your mind, and of all the other materials and implements in your environment.

Following the consecration of the offerings is meditation on the four immeasurables. The four immeasurables are four attitudes that are to be cultivated without limit, which is why they are known as immeasurable, or unlimited. Unlimited means no limit on “how much” and no limit on “for whom.” The first immeasurable, in the usual enumeration, is love. Immeasurable love means no limit on how much love and how much compassion you generate, and especially no limit on for whom you generate it.

**May all beings be happy and free of suffering.**

**May their happiness not diminish. May they abide in equanimity.**

Intrinsic to all four of these attitudes is impartiality. When enumerated separately, impartiality is the fourth of the four immeasurables—love, compassion, empathetic joy, and impartiality. However, when you actually practice them, you need to begin with the cultivation of impartiality. We all have some degree of love, some degree of compassion, and some degree of empathetic joy. But in order to make these genuine and to make them immeasurable we need to cultivate impartiality, which is why it is to be cultivated first. When we say that we all have some degree of love, we mean that we all wish that some beings be happy and possess causes of happiness. We all also have some degree of compassion—we all wish that some beings be free from suffering and the causes of suffering. The problem is that we generally wish these things only for certain beings and do not particularly care about what happens to other beings. Although our love and compassion are indeed love and compassion, they are partial; and because they are partial, they are impure and incomplete. If you cultivate impartiality, they become unlimited—which means that they become perfect. So the first stage in the cultivation of the four immeasurables is to cultivate impartiality towards beings, which means cultivating the attitude that you have the same amount of love and the same amount of compassion for all beings. And then, on that basis, you can strengthen the attitude of love—the desire that beings be happy and possess causes of happiness—and by strengthening it you will strengthen that attitude towards all beings in general. If you do not cultivate impartiality in the beginning, by strengthening your love for some you may generate aggression for others. Therefore, you need first to cultivate impartiality, and then, on the basis of impartiality, to cultivate the other three—love, compassion, and empathetic joy. However, in the text they are listed in the usual order, which places impartiality—here referred to as equanimity—at the end.

Essentially love consists of wanting others to be happy, and compassion consists of wanting others not to suffer. These two attitudes, of course, are excellent. But if they are present without any way to bring about what you wish—if your love is without any way to bring about the happiness of beings and your compassion is devoid of any way to remove the sufferings of beings—then they will actually become a cause of greater suffering and sadness for you. You will be more sensitive to the sufferings of others because of your attitude, but will feel unable to help. And so, instead of just the other being suffering, two beings will suffer—you will suffer as well. If,

however, the attitudes of love and compassion include the understanding of how you can actually bring about happiness and freedom from suffering, then these attitudes do not become sources of depression. Therefore we expand the attitude of love from “may all beings be happy” to “may all beings be happy and possess causes of happiness,” and expand the attitude of compassion from “may all beings be free from suffering” to “may all beings be free from suffering and free from causes of suffering.” While you cannot confidently expect to be able to make all beings happy on the spot, you can gradually cause beings to accomplish or accumulate causes of happiness and to avoid and get rid of causes of suffering. And because you understand that in the long term you will be able to make beings happy and free beings from suffering, then these attitudes of love and compassion become not only confident but actually joyous. In this way, the effect of love and compassion is no longer sadness and depression but empathetic joy, which is the third immeasurable. In this way, you train or cultivate the four immeasurables as a preliminary for meditation on the Medicine Buddha.

Now to apply the four immeasurables to the specific context of the Medicine Buddha practice: Since the primary cause of suffering in this case is the physical affliction of sickness, and since that is the initial focus of this practice, you can focus on that in your meditation on the four immeasurables. Thinking that it is in order to remove the sickness of beings that you are praying to the Medicine Buddha, meditating upon the Medicine Buddha, reciting the Medicine Buddha’s mantra, and so on, you could formulate the four immeasurables in the following way: Immeasurable love would be the attitude, “May all beings possess the happiness of well-being and the causes of that.” Immeasurable compassion would be, “May all beings be free from sickness and the causes of sickness.” Immeasurable empathetic joy would be rejoicing in the well-being of others and in their freedom from illness. And immeasurable impartiality would be generating these aspirations and attitudes not merely for those you know, such as your own friends and family, but for all beings without exception.

When you do the Medicine Buddha practice with the intention and aspiration to benefit yourself and others in this way, sometimes you will perceive an evident benefit: Either you or someone else will be freed from sickness in a way that you identify as a result of your practice. This will give you greater confidence in the practice. At other times, no matter how much you practice and how hard you pray and how many mantras you say, you

will not perceive any evident benefit. And this will cause you to doubt the practice, and you will think, “Well maybe it doesn’t really work.” But you need to remember that the benefit of this practice is not like the direct physical effect of the function of a machine, such as something that emits a laser beam. There is always a result from doing this practice, but the way in which the result will manifest is not absolutely definite. So in your attitude towards the results of practice, you need to have a long-term focus. In that way you can keep the practice focused on the four immeasurables.

That completes the preliminaries to the Medicine Buddha practice. I am going to stop there for this afternoon, and we will conclude with the dedication of the merit of this teaching to the liberation of all beings.

[Dedication of merit.]

### 3 THE VISUALIZATION UNCOVERS THE INHERENT PURITY OF PHENOMENA

---



YESTERDAY WE DISCUSSED the lineage supplication of this practice, the refuge and bodhicitta, the consecration of the practice place and the materials, and the meditation on the four immeasurables. Today we are going to begin with the actual visualization of oneself as the Medicine Buddha, which causes the blessing of the Medicine Buddha to enter into one, and the simultaneous visualization of the mandala of the Medicine Buddha in front of one, which serves as an object of one's supplication and a field for the accumulation of merit through making offerings.

The visualization is begun by purifying your perception of the entire world, including your own body and mind. This is done initially through the single recitation of the mantra of the pure nature or the mantra of the purity of dharmata:

**OM SOBHAWA SHUDDHA SARWA DHARMA SOBHAWA  
SHUDDHO HAM**

The meaning of the mantra reflects its significance. Following the initial syllable *Om*, the next word is *swabava*, which means the nature, and then *shuddha*, which means pure. Ordinarily the things that appear to us—the world of external appearances and our internal perceiving mind—appear to us as being impure because of the presence of the kleshas and other obscurations in our minds. What is meant here by the pure nature is that, although we perceive appearances and our minds in this impure way, this is not their actual nature. While they seem to be impure, in fact, in their nature, in and of themselves, they are pure. Following the statement “pure by nature,” are the words *sarwa*, which means all, and *dharma*, which means things. So the mantra states that “all things are pure in their nature.”

The term *dharma* usually has one of two meanings. One meaning is



*sadharma* or the genuine dharma, the teachings of the Buddha, and the other meaning is thing, things in general, anything that can be known. Here it refers to things.

The mantra continues with the words *swabava shuddha* a second time and then *A Hum*. Because of the way that Sanskrit links words, the second *shuddha* and *A Hum* are joined together to become *shuddho ham*. Again *swabava shuddha* means pure in its nature or their nature; *A Hum* can mean self or the very embodiment of something. Here it is understood to mean that not only are all things pure in their nature, but that they are in and of themselves the very embodiment of that purity. So this mantra is essentially a statement of why the path can lead to the result. Because things are pure in their nature, because this purity is present within the nature of things, then it can manifest as experience and as a result—through taking that inherent purity as a path. For example, because sesame oil is present within sesame seeds, then by pressing the seeds you can extract the oil. If there were no oil present within the sesame seeds, you could not get oil, no matter how hard you pressed the seeds. Because the hidden nature of things is their purity, then by regarding things as pure, you can directly experience them as pure; you can directly experience their purity. The *swabawa* mantra is used here to point this out, and also to introduce or begin the samadhi which will culminate in the visualization of yourself as the Medicine Buddha.

Following the recitation of the *swabava* mantra, you say the Tibetan words, *tong pa nyi du jur*, which means that everything becomes empty or becomes emptiness.

### **Everything turns into emptiness.**

This describes the beginning of the visualization. At this point you imagine that everything disappears, that everything becomes emptiness—not only in how it is but in how it manifests. However, it is important to remember that you are not pretending here that things are other than they are. You are using the imaginary dissolution of things into emptiness as an acknowledgment of the fact that things have been, from the very beginning,<sup>8</sup> empty in their nature.

The dissolution of ordinary impure appearances into emptiness is the first part of a two-step process that serves to counteract our usual superimposition of impurity onto appearances.<sup>9</sup> The second step is the emergence

from or within that expanse of emptiness of the pure appearances which are the realm and palace of the Medicine Buddha.

**From the depth of emptiness, this triple universe becomes  
The exquisite palace, where**

The first step is to think that all of the impure appearances dissolve into emptiness, and the second is that from within that emptiness the realm and palace of the Medicine Buddha emerge. Now when you imagine that the place in which you are practicing has become the realm and palace of the Medicine Buddha, you do not limit this consideration to this world or to this planet alone. As it says in the liturgy, it is the entire billion worlds of this larger world system, or galaxy.

There are two ways that you can do this practice. The simplest way is to visualize yourself as the Medicine Buddha. The more elaborate way, which is indicated in the liturgy, is also to visualize the Medicine Buddha, surrounded by his retinue, present in front of you as well. It is easier for beginners to do the self-visualization alone; on the other hand, doing the front visualization as well gives one the opportunity to gather the accumulation of merit. In either case, in the midst of the realm of the Medicine Buddha, which you have visualized as emerging from the expanse of emptiness, there is a palace. This palace is square, and quite symmetrical. In the center of each of the four sides is a large gateway, each forming an entry into the palace. If you are doing the practice with both self and front visualizations, you need to visualize two palaces: one in the center of which you will sit as the self visualization; and one in front of you and somewhat elevated, which will serve as the residence for the front visualization.

**On lion thrones, each with a lotus and moon disk on top  
Appear deep blue HUNGS, the seed syllable of myself and the  
main figure visualized in the front,**

In the center of the self-visualization's palace is a throne made of gold and jewels and other precious substances that is upheld by eight snow lions. The significance of the lion throne is primarily the sense of utter fearlessness—indicating the deity's freedom from fear and danger of any kind. On top of the throne is a fully opened lotus flower, on top of the center of which, lying

flat, is a moon disc, on top of which you will be visualizing yourself seated in the form of the Medicine Buddha. In the center of the palace in the front visualization, you visualize a sixteen-petaled lotus, in the center of which you visual an eight-petaled lotus. In the center of the eight-petaled lotus, you visualize another lion throne, lotus, and moon disc seat, as in the self-visualization. There are eight- and sixteen-petaled lotuses in the front visualization because there will be additional buddhas and bodhisattvas in those places.

Next, on top of the moon discs in both the front and self visualizations, you visualize a blue syllable HUM.<sup>10</sup> The HUM syllable on top of the moon disc in the self-visualization palace represents the essence of the mind or wisdom of the self-visualization deity, and the blue HUM on top of the moon disc in the front-visualization palace represents the essence of the mind or wisdom of the front-visualization deity. This particular syllable HUM is used because HUM is the sound of dharmata, the expression as sound of the nature<sup>11</sup> itself. It is blue because that is the color of the deity who will emerge from the syllable—the Medicine Buddha is blue, as is Vajradhara—but also because blue represents that which is unchanging and unfabricated.<sup>12</sup> Having visualized the syllables, you then visualize innumerable rays of light radiating from each of these syllables simultaneously. On the end of each ray of light are innumerable offering goddesses holding various offering substances which they present to all the buddhas and bodhisattvas in all the directions throughout space. This vast array of buddhas and bodhisattvas receives these offerings with pleasure, and as a consequence their nonconceptual compassion is aroused, which manifests as their blessings' coming back in the form of rays of blue light which dissolve into the HUM. Rays of light which went out bearing offerings are reabsorbed bearing blessings back into the two HUM syllables. Once again rays of light radiate outward from both HUM's simultaneously, this time purifying the entire external world, the entire universe, of everything in it that could possibly cause harm or suffering of any kind, and also purifying the mental continuums of all beings without exception of any kind of suffering or misery or cause of suffering. Then the rays of light are reabsorbed again into their respective HUM's. At that moment the syllables are instantly and simultaneously transformed into the Medicine Buddha.

**From which, arises Menla, his body the color of lapis lazuli and radiating light.**

After this transformation, the self-visualized Medicine Buddha that you are identifying with is now considered your own body, and the front visualization is in front of you. The Medicine Buddha is a brilliant blue in color—the color of a precious stone called *vaidurya*, generally considered to be lapis lazuli. In appearance the Medicine Buddha is luminous and majestic and radiates innumerable rays of light primarily the color of his own body. Yidams can appear in a number of different ways—peaceful or wrathful and frightening; *nirmanakaya* or *sambhogakaya* in form, and so on. The Medicine Buddha is peaceful and in the *nirmanakaya* form.

**He is clothed in the three dharma robes.**

Saying that he appears in *nirmanakaya* form means that, though some yidams appearing in *sambhogakaya* form wear lots of jewelry and silken robes and so on, the Medicine Buddha manifests in what is called the passionless appearance of a *nirmanakaya* buddha, wearing only the three dharma robes commonly worn by the monastic sangha: the inner and outer upper robes and the lower skirt.

The Medicine Buddha has two arms.

**His right hand in the mudra of supreme generosity holds an *arura*.  
His left hand in meditation mudra holds a begging bowl.**

His right hand is extended, palm outward, over his right knee in the gesture called supreme generosity. In it he holds the *arura*, or myrobalan, fruit. This plant represents all the best medicines. The position of his right hand and the *arura* which he holds represent the eradication of suffering, especially the suffering of sickness, using the means of relative truth. Sickness can be alleviated by adjusting the functioning of interdependent causes and conditions by the use of relative means within the realm of relative truth, such as medical treatment and so on. The giving of these methods is represented by the gesture of the Medicine Buddha's right hand.

His left hand rests in his lap, palm upward, in the gesture of meditative stability or meditation, which represents the eradication of sickness and suffering—and, indeed, the very roots of *samsara*—through the realization of absolute truth. From the point of view of either relative truth or absolute truth, the fundamental cause of sickness and suffering is a lack of content-

ment and the addictive quality of samsara. Therefore, to indicate the need for contentment, in his left hand he holds a begging bowl.

Because the mind of the Medicine Buddha is stainless and pure, his form reflects this in its excellence and physical perfection.

**With the major and minor marks complete, he sits in the vajra posture.**

He is adorned by what are called the marks and signs, the primary and secondary indications of the awakening of a buddha. In all aspects of his physical form—the crown protuberance, or *ushnisha*, the image of wheels on the soles of his feet, and so forth—the Medicine Buddha is identical to the Buddha Sakyamuni, with the single difference that the Buddha Sakyamuni's skin is golden in color, while the Medicine Buddha is blue. Because the Medicine Buddha is immersed in an unwavering samadhi of absorption within the realization of the nature of all things, and because this samadhi is utterly stable, he is seated with his legs fully crossed in the vajra posture. You visualize yourself in this form, and you visualize the front visualization in the same form as well.

Everything described up to this point—the palace, the throne, and the Medicine Buddha—pertains to both the self and the front visualizations. In the case of the front visualization, however, you will remember that the lion throne sits in the center of an eight-petaled lotus, which in turn sits in the center of a sixteen-petaled lotus. Now on seven of the eight petals of the eight petaled lotus, which surround the Medicine Buddha in the front visualization—on the seven petals other than the one directly in front of the Medicine Buddha—are the seven other medicine buddhas, the Buddha Shakyamuni and six others. As is the principal Medicine Buddha, they are all adorned by the thirty-two marks and the eighty signs of physical perfection which grace the body of a buddha.

**In particular, on the lotus petals of the front visualization  
Are the seven Buddhas, Shakyamuni and the others, and  
dharma texts.**

On the eighth petal, directly in front of the principal Medicine Buddha, is a volume of the dharma. The reason for this is that in the end it is

the dharma that liberates us from samsara and from sickness. When we talk about the *sadharma*, or the genuine dharma, we are referring fundamentally to the third and fourth of the four noble truths: the truth of the cessation of suffering and the truth of the path leading to the cessation of suffering. The truth of cessation is the result of practice, which is the abandonment or transcendence of everything that is to be abandoned or transcended.<sup>13</sup> The truth of the path is the dharma we practice that leads to that transcendence. The dharma in essence is the experience and realization of the meaning of dharma<sup>14</sup> that is present within the minds of those who practice it and achieve its result. By extension, the dharma also refers to the tradition of passing on that meaning, and therefore one visualizes that meaning passed on from the Buddha down to the present day in the form of books on the petal directly in front of the Medicine Buddha visualized in front.

**Around them are the sixteen bodhisattvas,  
 Around them are the ten protectors of the world,  
 And the twelve great chiefs with their respective retinues.  
 The Four Great Kings are at the four gates.**

Surrounding the seven Medicine Buddhas and the volumes of dharma, are sixteen bodhisattvas on the petals of the sixteen-petaled lotus. These are the sixteen bodhisattvas who were the main recipients of the teachings of the Medicine Buddha sutras given by the Buddha. They all manifest in the sambhogakaya form, wearing ornate jewelry and so forth. Beyond the perimeter of that lotus, but still within the palace of the front visualization, are twenty-two other main deities, each of whom has a retinue. On the Medicine Buddha's right, forming a semicircle to the right of the principal deities, are the ten protectors of the directions—otherwise known as the ten protectors of the world. These are deities such as Brahma, Indra, and so forth. Likewise, forming a semicircle on the left side of the palace are the twelve yaksha chieftains or generals. Each of these figures is surrounded by a vast retinue of their own. Finally, in the four gates or gateways of the palace visualized in front are the four kings of the gods. They are visualized here because they are protectors of the buddhadharma in general. Specifically whenever the Buddha taught, and especially whenever he exhibited miracles, he would emanate a magnificent magical pal-

ace like this one, and, to signify their function as protectors of his teachings, these four kings of the gods would guard each of the four gates as gatekeepers.

When you are practicing, if you can, visualize all of these deities. But if you cannot, do not be discouraged. Do not feel that somehow the practice has become ineffective or invalid because you cannot visualize each and every one of them. It is sufficient to generate as clear a visualization as you can of yourself as the Medicine Buddha and of the Medicine Buddha in front of you. If, in addition to that, you can visualize the seven additional medicine buddhas and the volumes of dharma, good. If, in addition to that, you can visualize the sixteen bodhisattvas, that is also good. But you should gauge the extent of the visualization to what you actually can do. In any case, the practice will be effective and will cause the blessing of dharma in general and the blessing of the Medicine Buddha in particular to enter you. It will serve its function and be effective, regardless of how you do the visualization. More important than how many deities you visualize is to understand what you are doing. And most important is to understand that by visualizing yourself as the Medicine Buddha you are not pretending to be something that you are not, and that by visualizing the Medicine Buddha and his retinue in front of you, you are not pretending that they are in a place where they are not. By definition, buddhas are omniscient. Whenever someone thinks of them, brings them to mind, or supplicates them, they are aware of it and respond with their compassion and blessing. In the final analysis, the situation is identical to their actually being present anywhere they are thought of. Therefore, it is always appropriate to regard a buddha that is present in one's mind as actually being present in front of one. When you think that the Medicine Buddha, together with his retinue, is present in front of you, it is really true that they are.

Visualizing yourself as the Medicine Buddha is also appropriate, because your fundamental nature—what you truly are—is buddha nature. Buddha nature is essentially the potential to attain awakening. At some point in the future you will attain the same awakening or buddhahood as the Medicine Buddha himself. By visualizing yourself as the Medicine Buddha, you are assuming the appearance of what fundamentally you are even now and what manifestly you will be upon your awakening. It is to acknowledge this truth that you assume the aspect of the body, speech, and mind of the Medicine Buddha, which is, therefore, entirely appropriate.

While it is entirely appropriate to visualize yourself as the Medicine Buddha and to visualize the Medicine Buddha and retinue in front of you, you may still have some hesitation or doubt that the visualization is anything more than just a visualization. This is understood, and therefore the next phase of the practice is designed to counteract that doubt. In order to alleviate any residual doubts you may have, you next invite the actual wisdom deities and dissolve them into the visualization.

**From the three syllables in their three places and the HUNG in their hearts,  
Lights radiate, invoking from their own eastern buddha realms, countless  
Wisdom deities which dissolve into myself and the one visualized in front.**

The first step in inviting the wisdom deities is to visualize in the three places of the self-visualized Medicine Buddha, in the three places of the Medicine Buddha visualized in front, and, if possible, in the three places of the rest of the deities in the retinue, the three syllables, OM AH HUNG. Inside your head you visualize a white OM, which is the essence of the body of the Medicine Buddha; in your throat a red AH, which is the essence of his speech; and in your heart a blue HUM, which is the essence of his mind. Visualizing these in the body of the self-visualized Medicine Buddha and in the bodies of the deities visualized in front, you then think that from these syllables rays of light of the corresponding colors—and most particularly rays of blue light from the HUM syllables in the heart centers of the deities—radiate. This radiation of light invites, from their individual buddha realms, the deities of the mandala. Each of the eight Medicine buddhas—the principle one and the seven buddhas of the retinue—has his own realm, all of which are understood to be in the eastern direction.<sup>15</sup> From these different pure realms the eight Medicine Buddhas and their retinues of deities are invited and they all dissolve into you as the Medicine Buddha and into the front visualization. In practice you do not think that they immediately dissolve into you, but that they present themselves and are present in the sky in front of you, between the two palaces of the self and front visualizations.

Having described the visualization, you then recite a stanza that is an actual invitation to the deities to approach.



**HUNG**

**The eight Menla companions and all deities without exception  
I invite here to this place. Kindly rain upon us your great blessings.  
Bestow the supreme empowerment on those who are worthy and  
faithful.**

**Dispel false guides and obstacles to long life.**

**NAMO MAHA BEKENDZE SAPARIWARA BENZA  
SAMAYADZA DZA BENZA SAMAYA TIKTRA LEN**

First you invite the eight Medicine Buddhas together with their retinues, saying, “Please come to this place and rain down your great blessing upon me, the practitioner, and upon others.” Then you ask that they, “Bestow the supreme empowerment upon me, the fortunate one, who has faith,” and that, by so doing, they, “Please dispel obstacles, such as obstacles to life and longevity and other obstacles in general.”

The mantra that follows seals and reinforces this act of invitation. The mantra means, “Great King of Medicine, together with your retinue, *vajra samaya jaja*.”<sup>16</sup> *Vajra samaya* means unchanging commitment or samaya. Here you are reminding these buddhas of their commitment to liberate beings. From their initial generation of bodhicitta, up to and including the moment of their attainment of full buddhahood, the motivation for their entire path was the wish to liberate beings. They therefore have an unchanging commitment—a vajra-like or indestructible samaya—to the liberation of beings. So when you say these words, *vajra samaya jaja*, you are saying to these buddhas, “You must come here and bless me because you have committed yourself to do so.” At that point, then, think with confidence that all of the wisdom deities of the mandala have actually come and are present in the sky in front of you.

The mantra that follows is *vajra samaya tiktralen*. *Vajra samaya* means unchanging commitment, and *tiktra* means to remain stable. With this mantra you are saying, “Through the power of your unchanging commitment to the welfare and liberation of beings, please dissolve inseparably into me and remain within me stably or permanently.” At that point you think that all of the invited deities, reminded of their commitment and with their compassion aroused in that way, dissolve both into the self visualization and into the deities of the front visualization. And at that point think that your body, speech, and mind visualized as the Medicine

Buddha and the body, speech, and mind of the Medicine Buddha have become indivisible.<sup>17</sup>

We are going to stop there for this morning, but if you have any questions, you are welcome to ask them.

**Question:** Does the Medicine Buddha ever have a consort and, if so, what is her name?

**Rinpoche:** In this case, because he is visualized in the form of a supreme nirmanakaya, he does not. There could be cases in which he is visualized in a sambhogakaya form with a consort in order to indicate the unity of upaya and prajna—it is possible, but I cannot think of an instance, and so I cannot say his consort's name is this or that.

**Question:** Rinpoche, in the visualization, there are eight petals and then sixteen petals around that. Petals aren't really that large and so it is difficult for me to visualize each of them containing a bodhisattva and his retinue. Is it like a window to their world or what is the best way to visualize this realistically?

**Rinpoche:** In pure realms flowers can get really big. But if it makes it easier to relate to, these are basically thrones that are somewhat connected with one another and that have the basic shape or style of flower petals.

**Question:** Rinpoche talked about the front visualization as being a field for the accumulation of merit. Why does the front visualization have something to do with accumulating merit?

**Rinpoche:** In this practice, as the liturgy indicates, merit is accumulated through paying homage and making various offerings—the mandala offering and the offering of praises and so forth—primarily to the front visualization. You accumulate merit by performing offerings to that in which you have absolute confidence, which is the actual Buddha. Therefore, it is easier to accumulate merit by making offerings to the front visualization, which you are perceiving as different from and possibly superior to yourself.

**Question:** When doing the mantra towards the end of the practice, do we focus our attention primarily on ourself and the mantra in our heart or do we alternate attention between the Buddha in front and ourselves?

**Rinpoche:** You apply it to both. You visualize the seed syllable and the

mantra garland within the heart of both the self and front visualizations, and in both cases, you identify it as the embodiment of the wisdom or mind of the deity. Then normally you would think that rays of light radiate from the seed syllable and mantra garland in the heart of the self visualization. These rays of light strike and enter the hearts of the deities of the front visualization, arousing their compassion, causing rays of light to come from the front visualization and to dispel the sickness and suffering of all beings and so forth.

**Question:** I can't manage to visualize the front visualization and myself as the Medicine Buddha simultaneously. Should I alternate between them? Should I spend a chunk of time doing the front visualization and then come back to the self visualization for an amount of time?

**Rinpoche:** That's fine. You can go back and forth.

**Question:** Quickly or slowly or what?

**Rinpoche:** The best thing is to go back and forth as frequently as is comfortable.

**Question:** Rinpoche, does this particular sadhana have any special significance for you? Is this of special significance to the Thrangu lineage?

**Rinpoche:** This does not have any particular significance for me or my monastery, except that it is one of the three Medicine Buddha practices which is normally done in the Kagyu tradition as a whole. There is a long one, a medium one, and this one, which is the short one. We are practicing this one because it is the short one.

**Question:** What Tibetan word is being translating as "pure?" And do you translate this word in any other way?

**Translator:** *Takpa*.

**Question:** Is it always translated as "pure"?

**Translator:** By *me*, yes. A lot of people do a lot of different things; I cannot guarantee that they always call it "pure."

**Question:** Maybe Rinpoche could say what the word means.

**Rinpoche:** You can think of synonyms for pure as being "free of impu-

urity,” which by extension would mean “free of defect or imperfection.” It would indicate that which is stainless, that which is perfect, flawless, and so on.

**Question:** Rinpoche, is there a particular significance for the light radiating from the eastern Buddha realms?

**Rinpoche:** In the sutras of the Medicine Buddha, the Buddha described their realms—the principal realm of the principal Medicine Buddha and the other realms of the attendant buddhas—as all being in the east.

**Question:** When we visualize light going out to the universe, does that include everything? Rocks and trees and chairs and buildings?

**Translator:** At which point? During the creation of the deity or during the recitation of the mantra?

**Question:** During the recitation of the mantra.

**Rinpoche:** Yes. Initially, before the generation of the deity, you purify your perception of the entire universe by visualizing that it all dissolves into emptiness. Theoretically, from that point onward all impurity has ceased. But when you get to the repetition of the main mantra you can renew that purification by once again bringing to mind impure appearances and purifying them with the rays of light which emerge from the heart of the deity.

**Question:** Rinpoche, in other visualization practices, sometimes there’s a sense of seeing one’s own root teacher in the form of that deity. Is there anything like that in this practice?

**Rinpoche:** Yes, it is appropriate to identify the front visualization with your root guru. People relate to the front visualization in slightly different ways. If they feel particularly devoted to the Medicine Buddha, then they will primarily think of the front visualization as the actual Medicine Buddha. But they can also think of the front visualization as in essence their root guru.

So we will conclude by dedicating the merit.

## 4 BECAUSE OF ITS VASTNESS, OFFERING THE ENTIRE UNIVERSE PRODUCES GREAT MERIT

---



**T**HIS MORNING WE WENT OVER the visualization of oneself as the Medicine Buddha, the visualization of the Medicine Buddha in front, and finally the dissolving of the actual wisdom deity into both the self and front visualizations as a remedy for one's habitual perception of things as impure or ordinary.

Having just dissolved the wisdom beings into oneself and into the front visualization—as a remedy for one's obscurations, one's wrongdoing, and one's conceptualization, we then receive empowerment. This phase of the practice is represented in the liturgy simply by the mantra:

### **OM HUM TRAM HRI AH ABHIKENTZA HUM**

The visualization which accompanies the mantra is as follows: Once again you visualize the three syllables—OM AH HUM—in the three places of oneself as the Medicine Buddha and of the deities of the front visualization, and once again rays of light radiate from them—especially from the HUM in your heart—inviting this time the five male buddhas of the five families with their retinues from their pure realms. The buddhas are holding in their hands precious vases<sup>18</sup> filled with the ambrosia of wisdom, which they pour into you as the self-visualized Medicine Buddha through the aperture at the very center of the top of your head. The first part of this mantra—OM HUM TRAM HRI AH—represents this empowerment being administered by the five buddhas simultaneously. OM represents Vairocana; HUM, Akshobya; TRAM, Ratnasambhava; HRI, Amitabha; and AH, Amogasiddhi.<sup>19</sup> Visualizing that this pure ambrosia fills your en-

tire body, you think that it purifies all the wrongdoing, obscurations, and defilements of any kind whatsoever of your body, speech, and mind. The words *Abhikentsa* mean empowerment.

The next section of the practice is the accumulation of merit through making offerings. As indicated earlier, the self visualization presents offerings to the front visualization. Rays of light emerge from the heart of the self visualization. On the ends of these rays of light are offerings goddesses holding various offering substances, which they present to all the deities of the front visualization.

## **HUNG**

**Flowers, incense, lights, scents,**

**Food, music and so forth;**

**Forms, sounds, smells, tastes, touch, and all dharmas,**

**I offer to the deities.**

**May we perfect the two accumulations.**

**OM BENZA ARGHAM PADYAM PUPE DHUPE ALOKE**

**GENDHE NEWIDYE SHABDA RUPA SHABDA**

**GENDHE RASA SAPARSHE TRATITSA HUNG**

First they present a set of eight related offerings. First is drinking water, which is offered to the mouths of the deities. Second is water for washing or rinsing the feet, which is offered to the feet of the deities. Third is flowers, which are offered to the eyes of the deities. Fourth is incense, the scent of which is offered to the nose of the deities. Fifth is lamps, which are offered again to the eyes of the deities. Sixth is perfume, which is offered to the whole body of the deities. Seventh is food, offered to the mouths of the deities. And eighth is musical instruments symbolizing the sound of music, offered to the ears of the deities.

Offered with these eight offerings are the five offerings of pleasant things which are perceived by the five senses. These are beautiful forms, pleasant sounds, smells, tastes, and tactile sensations.

In general, offerings can be categorized into four types: outer, inner, secret, and ultimate. Outer offerings are essentially the offering of whatever is beautiful and pleasant in the external world. What is being presented to the deity here are all things in the external world that are appropriate and beautiful. By making these offerings, you gather the accumulation of merit.

Therefore it says in the text, “By making these offerings to the deities, may we complete the two accumulations.” The two accumulations are the conceptual accumulation of merit and the nonconceptual accumulation of wisdom. The making of the offerings themselves gathers or completes the conceptual accumulation of merit; when these offerings are made within the recognition of the ultimate unreality of the offerings, the offerer, and the act of offering—when there is recognition of the emptiness of the offerings, the emptiness of the offerer, and the emptiness of the act of offering—then the nonconceptual accumulation of wisdom is also completed.

Finally the offerings are presented at the end of the stanza with the offering mantras that denote them. The word *vajra* at the beginning of the mantra indicates that the nature of the offering substances is emptiness. Then the individual offerings are named in order, and finally *tra ti tsa*, or *pra ti cha*, means individually to each. So to each of the deities the offerings are presented.

At this point in most vajrayana practices the outer offerings would be followed by the inner, secret, and ultimate offerings. The inner offering is generally the offering of some kind of tormā. Torma is referred to in this context as an inner offering because the offering of it is a way to increase your samādhi, your meditative absorption, which is an internal phenomenon. The secret offering is the offering of the unity of bliss and emptiness, which is made in order to induce or stabilize this recognition in the practitioner. In the same way, the ultimate offering, the offering of the recognition of the ultimate nature itself, is made in order to stabilize that recognition in the practitioner. Here these offerings are not given because this practice, while it is vajrayana in tradition, tends to follow the sutras in style. Therefore, the offerings that follow are those which are commonly presented in the sutras themselves.

The next two sets of offerings presented are the eight auspicious substances and the eight auspicious signs or marks.

## HUNG

**The eight foremost auspicious substances,  
The best royal white mustard seed, and the others,  
I offer to the deity.**

**May the two accumulations be perfected.  
MANGALAM ARTHA SIDDHI HUNG**

The eight auspicious substances are so called because they are eight substances or things which are connected with the arising of dharma in this world. They are considered auspicious because they were significant in bringing about the arising of the teachings. The eight auspicious signs or designs appear on the body of a buddha and are therefore considered auspicious. The eight auspicious substances include such things as the conch shell with the swirl going clockwise, which the god Indra offered to the Buddha when he requested him to turn the wheel of the dharma. Based on Indra's offering, the Buddha first taught the dharma, as a consequence of which beings have the opportunity to encounter the dharma and attain its results. For that reason, the conch shell with its clockwise swirl, is considered auspicious. Another of the substances is durva grass, which a grass cutter and seller, whose name was also auspicious, offered the Buddha when he encountered him just before the Buddha's awakening. The Buddha used the durva grass to make a seat, on which he sat while he attained awakening. Therefore, because it is connected with the Buddha's awakening, which is the event that transformed this period of history from a period of darkness into a period of illumination, durva grass is also considered an auspicious substance.<sup>20</sup>

Thus, you offer the eight auspicious substances to the Medicine Buddha and his retinue, making the aspiration to complete the two accumulations by offering them. The mantra at the end of that stanza is *mangalam*, which means auspicious, and *artha siddhi*, which makes it the accomplishment of auspiciousness.

The next set of offerings are the eight auspicious signs or marks.

**HUNG**

**The eight foremost auspicious symbols,**

**The peerless royal vase and all others,**

**I offer to the deity.**

**May sentient beings perfect the two accumulations.**

**MANGALAM KUMBHA HUNG**

In general, every buddha is adorned with the thirty-two marks and the eighty signs, but of all of these, eight are foremost. These eight are actually the shapes of particular parts of his body, which are reminiscent of certain emblems. For example, the shape of the top of the Buddha's head is remi-



niscent of a parasol, so the precious parasol is one of these auspicious signs. The shape of his eyes is like the shape of a certain golden fish, so the golden fish is another one. The shape of his throat is like a certain kind of vase, so the precious vase is yet another, and so on. Again, one offers these eight shapes or signs to the deities in order to bring about the auspiciousness of them, making the aspiration that by making these offerings all beings without exception will perfect the two accumulations: the conceptual accumulation of merit and the non-conceptual accumulation of wisdom. The mantra at the end of this stanza is *mangalam kumbha hum*. *Mangalam* means auspicious; *kumbaha* means vase. The vase is used here to indicate all eight of these signs or shapes. Because it represents the shape of the Buddha's throat, and because it was out of the Buddha's throat originally that the dharma issued forth, the vase is considered of foremost importance.

The next offering is the offering of the seven articles of royalty, which are seven possessions<sup>21</sup> unique to a certain type of monarch called a chakravartin.

**HUNG The foremost desirable qualities, the seven precious articles,  
The most excellent royal one, the jewel, and the others,  
I offer to the deity.  
May I perfect the two accumulations.  
OM MANI RATNA HUNG**

A chakravartin appears during the best or finest periods of history, during what is called a fortunate eon or period. These seven articles distinguish a chakravartin from any other monarch; however the true internal meaning of these seven articles is that they represent the seven aspects of the path to awakening, which is traversed by all buddhas and bodhisattvas. So when you make this offering to the deities, you think that externally you are offering the seven articles of royalty as representations of the seven aspects of the path to awakening.

You present these offerings to all the deities of the mandala visualized in front, making the aspiration that by doing so you will complete the two accumulations—the conceptual accumulation of merit and the nonconceptual accumulation of wisdom. The mantra used to complete this offering refers to the first of the seven articles, the precious jewel. *Mani* means jewel and *ratna* means precious.

The next offering, which completes the main section of the offerings, is the offering of a mandala.

**HUNG The foremost of all, Mount Meru  
With its four continents and subcontinents  
I offer to the deity.  
May the two accumulations be perfected.  
OM RATNA MANDALA HUNG**

In general, of course, we make these offerings in order to gather and complete the accumulation of merit. We do not make them for the benefit of the buddhas and bodhisattvas, who are their ostensible recipients. Buddhas and bodhisattvas are not particularly pleased by the presentation of offerings or displeased by their absence. The only real reason for making offerings is that the person making them gathers the accumulation of merit by doing so. We make offerings for our own benefit,<sup>22</sup> and it is how it affects us that is important. Offerings are not limited to that which you can actually physically assemble around you as offering substances. Offerings can be of any of three types, which are called actually assembled, mentally emanated, and produced through the power of aspiration. Actually assembled offerings are physically present and under your power to offer. Mentally emanated offerings are offerings that you imagine, that you do not actually have physically present before you, but that you can imagine clearly enough to offer in your mind. Offerings offered through the power of aspiration are things that are so vast and limitless that you cannot even encompass them in your mind or imagine them, but you can at least make the aspiration to offer them to the buddhas and bodhisattvas. It is said that any of these three types of offerings will all produce the accumulation of merit. We use the offering of the entire universe as a mandala because the vastness of it produces great merit.

Specifically mentioned are the central mountain, Mount Meru, together with the continents surrounding it. These together, along with everything that goes with them, make up the mandala, which is considered the principal among all offerings. In detail, the offering consists of Mount Meru, which includes on top of Mount Meru the second of the desire god realms—enumerated from the bottom up—called the heaven or god-realm of the thirty-three. Surrounding Mount Meru are seven concentric rings<sup>23</sup> of golden

mountains with lakes in between them. In these seven golden mountains and on their lakes live the gods of the first realm of the desire god realms and the four great kings—the same four kings who are guardians in the mandala of the Medicine Buddha. When you offer Mount Meru, you also think that you are offering all of the wealth of those god’s realms. Outside those seven golden mountains are the four main continents with their eight subcontinents, which are the habitation of humans—all of the wealth, possessions, splendor, and beauty of which you offer as well. In short, you offer the world, indeed the whole universe, and all it contains to all of the deities, and you make the aspiration that by so doing, you complete the two accumulations and that you and the whole world be free from sickness.

After the fundamental offerings—the eight traditional offerings of water, flowers, incense, and so forth, and the offering of everything that is pleasing to the five senses—there have occurred four different sets of offerings: the eight auspicious substances, the eight auspicious signs, the seven articles of royalty, and finally the offering of the mandala. The next offering is the offering of ablution—of washing the bodies of the deities. This is done in order to create the auspicious basis for the removal of your own wrongdoing, your own defilements, and your own obscurations—the afflictive obscurations and the cognitive obscurations.

## **HUNG**

**With scented water**

**I bathe the sugata’s body.**

**Although the deity is flawless,**

**This creates the auspicious connection for purifying all wrongs  
and obscurations.**

**OM SARWA TATHAGATA ABIKEKATE SAMAYA SHRIYE  
HUNG**

Here you think that from the heart of yourself visualized as the Medicine Buddha rays of light are emanated. On the tips of each of these rays are offering goddesses holding precious vases filled with ambrosia. With the ambrosia from these vases, they bathe the bodies of the primary Medicine Buddha, the seven other Medicine Buddhas, the sixteen bodhisattvas, and all of the other deities in the mandala. The words of the text say, “With scented water I bathe the sugata’s body; although the deity is without

stain, this creates the auspicious basis for purifying all wrongdoing and obscurations.”

This offering of ablution is culminated with the mantra, *Om Sarva Tathagata Abikekate Samaya Shriye Hung*. *Sarva* means all. *Tathagata* means tathagatas or buddhas. And *abikekate* refers to this process which in some contexts means empowerment, but in this context means ablution. Through this offering you increase the splendor and majesty of the deities; therefore, there is the words *shriye*, which means splendid, majestic, or glorious.

The next offering, which goes along with ablution, is drying the bodies of the deities, which is done by visualized offering goddesses holding fine white cotton towels scented with perfume.

## **HUNG**

**With a scented, soft white cloth**

**I dry the victor's body.**

**Though your body is flawless,**

**This creates the auspicious connection for freedom from suffering.**

**OM KAYA BISHODHANI HUNG**

You state in these two stanzas that you are not washing and drying the deities because they are dirty or have stains that need to be washed away, and so on; you are drying the bodies of the deities after washing them because it creates the interdependent cause of drying up or removing the suffering of all beings. Therefore, you make the aspiration that the suffering of all beings—especially the sufferings of physical sickness and mental affliction—be removed. *Kaya vishodani* means the purification of the body.

Next is the offering of clothes or robes to the deities of the mandala.

**HUNG With these beautiful saffron robes**

**I clothe the victor's body.**

**Although your body is never cold,**

**This creates the auspicious connection for vitality to flourish.**

**OM BENZA WAYTRA AH HUNG**

Having bathed and dried them, next we have to offer them appropriate robes. The robes that are actually mentioned in the first line of this stanza are those that are offered to the Medicine Buddha and to the seven buddhas

in his retinue, all of whom, since they are manifesting in supreme nirmanakaya form, wear only the beautiful saffron red and yellow robes which are worn by buddhas. As the visualized goddesses offer the robes, you recite, “With these I clothe the Victor’s body.” As in the previous offerings, you are making this offering, not because the Medicine Buddha is in any danger of becoming cold, but in order to create the auspicious basis for benefitting yourself and others. Therefore, you say, “Although your body is never cold, this creates the auspicious basis for the flourishing of vitality and physical splendor.” As a result of this offering vitality and physical splendor will arise in you and others through the power of your aspiration. Although not mentioned specifically in the liturgy, the clothing offered to the bodhisattvas is appropriate to their appearance [in sambhogakaya form]: elegant garments of multicolored silk and jewelry made of gold and jewels, and so on. The bodhisattvas are offered fine clothes and jewelry not because they are particularly attached to them, but because by offering them you create the auspicious basis for the increase of vitality. The word *vastra* in the mantra means robes or clothing or fabric.

Each of these sections—ablution, drying, and offering clothing—has its own particular significance. The fundamental significance of all three of them is indicated in connection with the second, where it says, “I make this offering in order to establish the auspicious basis for the removal of suffering.” The point of making these offerings is to remove the suffering of beings, which is primarily accomplished on the level of auspicious interdependence by the second offering, drying. But to remove the suffering of beings you must first remove the causes of suffering, which are wrongdoing and obscurations. So therefore, drying is preceded by ablution, the symbolic function of which is to purify the wrongdoing and obscurations of all beings. Finally, once the suffering has been removed, what develops in its place is a state of mental and physical well-being—including physical vitality, splendor and health—and a state of wisdom and peace within the mind, the interdependent cause of the arising of which is established by the offering of robes and clothing, which is the third part.

Following the offerings come the praises. The praises are performed by imagining that offering goddesses emanated from the light rays from your heart sing the praises of the deities in the words of the liturgy with beautiful melodies. Praised are the qualities of body, speech, and mind of the Medicine Buddha and his retinue. These praises are not done in order to please

the Medicine Buddha; buddhas and bodhisattvas are not pleased by praise nor displeased by its absence. One performs the praises to remind oneself, the practitioner, of the qualities of the deities. This increases one's devotion and one's resolve or desire to attain the state of the deities, which increases one's diligence in practice.

The praises consist of three stanzas. The first is a praise of the Medicine Buddha. The second is a praise of the other seven medicine buddhas and the sixteen bodhisattvas. And the third is a praise of the remaining deities of the mandala, including the ten protectors of the ten directions, the twelve yaksha chieftains, and so forth.

The first stanza is addressed to the Medicine Buddha.

### **HUNG**

**Your body is like a mountain, the color of lapis lazuli.**

**You dispel the suffering of illness in sentient beings.**

**Surrounded by a retinue of eight bodhisattvas,**

**Holder of Medicine, precious deity, I praise and prostrate to you.**

The first line praises the appearance of his body or form: "The color of your body is like a mountain of lapis or vaidurya," which is to say that in appearance his body is like the stainless mass of a blue jewel, like a lapis or vaidurya, and radiant with rays of light. So that is a praise of the majesty of his appearance. The second line is praise of his activity, and it says, "You remove the sufferings of sickness of all beings." Sufferings of sickness here refer expressly to the literal suffering of physical illnesses, but also by implication ultimately to the sickness and the suffering of the sickness of samsara itself, which the Medicine Buddha also dispels.

Having praised his appearance and activity, you then praise his retinue. Here the retinue referred to in the liturgy is not the retinue of the mandala; what is referred to here are the eight great bodhisattvas who exemplify the mahayana sangha. These are not the same as the sixteen bodhisattvas in the mandala; in fact, not all eight of these eight primary bodhisattvas are among the sixteen, although some of them are. Generally speaking, when we talk about the sangha, there is the ordinary sangha of the common vehicle and the exalted sangha of the mahayana, which is made up of bodhisattvas. These are exemplified by what are called the eight close offspring of the Buddha, eight great bodhisattvas such as Manjusri, Avalokiteshvara,

Vajrapani, and so on.<sup>24</sup> Then in the last line you say, “I pay homage to and praise that deity who holds the precious medicine,” which is another way of referring to the Medicine Buddha himself.

The second stanza of praise praises the three jewels in general, exemplified by the buddhas, dharma, and sangha found in this mandala.

**Excellent Name, Precious Moon, Fine Gold, Free of Misery,  
Resounding Dharma Ocean, Dharma Mind, Shakyamuni,  
The genuine dharma, the sixteen bodhisattvas and others,  
To the precious three jewels, I offer praise and prostrate.**

First mentioned are the seven other medicine buddhas—Excellent Name, Precious Moon, Fine Gold, Free of Misery, Resounding Dharma Ocean, Dharma Mind, and Buddha Sakyamuni. Then, following that, is mentioned the dharma itself, visually represented in the mandala by the sutras and commentaries but also understood as being the essence of the path. Finally, for the sangha it mentions “the sixteen bodhisattvas, and so forth,” which means all of the mahayana sangha, as exemplified by the sixteen bodhisattvas found within this mandala. Then one completes the praise by saying, “I pay homage to and praise the three precious jewels.”

The final stanza is a praise to the remaining deities of the mandala and to all others who are associated with the mandala.

**To Brahma, Indra, the Great Kings, the Protectors of the Ten  
Directions,  
The twelve yaksha chiefs and all their assistants,  
Vidyadharas and rishis of medicine, divine and human,  
To the deities of ambrosial medicine, I offer praise and prostrate.**

First mentioned are Brahma and Indra, who are two among the ten protectors of the ten directions; and then the four great kings; the twelve yaksha generals or chieftains, together with their retainers; and then finally all of the holders of the knowledge of medicine and those who have mastered medicine, who here are referred to as vidyadharas and rishis of medicine, both those living in the realms of the gods and those living in the realms of humans. In short, one pays homage to and praises all of the deities of this mandala of ambrosial medicine.

All of the stages of the practice we have gone through today—the visualization of the bodies of the deities, the dissolution of the wisdom deities into them, the presentation of offerings and of praises to the deities—are aspects of the practice of the generation stage. In general, generation stage practice needs to have three characteristics: clear appearance or clarity of appearance, stable pride, and recollection of purity. What is meant by clear appearance is simply that there be a clear and distinct visualization of whatever it is you are visualizing. Whether you are visualizing the Medicine Buddha alone, that is to say yourself as the Medicine Buddha and the Medicine Buddha in front of you, or in addition to that you are visualizing the seven other medicine buddhas surrounding the front visualization, or in addition to that you are visualizing the sixteen bodhisattvas, or in addition to that you are visualizing the entire mandala with the ten protectors and the twelve chieftains, and so on, in any case, whatever you are visualizing, clear appearance means that the appearance of the deities—the color, the shape, the ornaments and costumes and robes, the scepters and other things that are held in the hands, and so on—should be visualized in a way that allows your mind to remain stable and calm while nevertheless generating a clear and vivid image.

The second characteristic of generation stage practice is stable pride. Generally speaking, of course, pride is something we want to get rid of—it is a *klesha*. But here the word pride means something that is very necessary in vajrayana practices. Pride means being free of the misconception that, in visualizing yourself as the Medicine Buddha or in visualizing the Medicine Buddha in front of you, you are pretending that things are other than what they are. Stable pride here means recognizing that, although you are meditating on the Medicine Buddha as a conscious act, nevertheless, that is what you actually are. It is acknowledging that you actually are the Medicine Buddha. In the case of the front visualization it is acknowledging or recognizing that the front visualization is the actual presence of the Medicine Buddha, right in front of you. So stable pride really refers to an attitude of confidence, trust and belief. It is important to recognize that when you do the self visualization and the front visualization you are not merely imagining something that is fictitious. You are not pretending that things are other than they are. When you make these offerings—admittedly mentally emanated—to the deities, you should reflect upon the fact that these offerings are actually occurring, they are actually taking their effect. By



making these offerings, you are actually gathering the accumulation of merit. To the extent that you have this confidence in the validity and accuracy of the practice, you will have that much delight in it, that much devotion, and that much benefit.

The third characteristic of the generation stage is the recollection of purity. This has several meanings. Most obviously it means the recognition that the forms of the deities are wondrous and splendid, that the deities are not unpleasant in appearance, that they are not strange or of an inappropriate form; they are beautiful and pleasing in every way. But beyond that, it is the recognition that the nature of the deity's form is the embodiment of the deity's wisdom. The deities' bodies are not flesh and blood—coarse bodies like our own—nor are they inanimate solid objects, as though made of earth and stone or wood. They are the pure embodiment of wisdom, which means that they are the expression of emptiness in the form of a clear, vivid appearance. Practically speaking, when visualizing them, you should see them or imagine them as being a vivid appearance—with their distinct colors, ornaments, scepters and so on—that is nevertheless without any coarse substantiality. Their appearance is luminous and vivid but insubstantial, like that of a rainbow. The fundamental meaning of this third point is that the deities are the embodiment in form of wisdom, and therefore their form is not samsaric in any way—it is not produced in any way by samsaric causes and conditions.

We are going to stop here for this afternoon and conclude with the dedication of merit. When performing the dedication of merit, think that you dedicate the merit of this session to the awakening of all beings in general and especially in the short term to the freedom of this world from all forms of sickness.

## 5 ON THE ORIGIN OF AUSPICIOUSNESS IN THE SUBSTANCES AND SYMBOLS

---



I WOULD LIKE TO BEGIN by wishing all of you a good morning. As you have no doubt noticed, I usually begin teaching sessions with the short lineage supplication that begins with the words “Great Vajradhara.”<sup>25</sup> We use this supplication because it is the one most often practiced at the seats of the Kagyu tradition and by Kagyu practitioners elsewhere. It was composed by Pengar Jampal Zangpo, the foremost disciple of the Sixth Gyalwang Karmapa, Thongwa Dönden, and the root guru of the Seventh Gyalwang Karmapa, Chödrak Gyamtso. After receiving instructions from the Sixth Gyalwang Karmapa, Pengar Jampal Zangpo went to Sky Lake in the north of Tibet to practice. In the middle of this lake, there was an island called Semodo and on that island there was a mountain with a cave in it. In this cave in utter isolation he practiced for eighteen years. The isolation there is complete, because it is very difficult to get to that island except in the middle of winter. He practiced, therefore, in total isolation for eighteen years and developed extraordinary realization of mahamudra. This lineage supplication, which he composed after that period of retreat, is regarded as containing the essence and blessing of his realization, which is therefore why we use it. So when you chant it, please do so with faith and devotion.

[Rinpoche and students recite supplication prayer.]

Before we discuss the recitation of the mantra, I would like to expand upon what I said yesterday about the offerings. During our discussion of the eight auspicious substances, we mentioned the conch shell and the durva grass, but I would like to discuss the origin of the auspiciousness of each of them in greater detail. The first of these is the conch shell. Immediately after the Buddha’s awakening he realized that, although he himself had seen

perfectly and completely the nature of all things, the dharmata—which is profound and tranquil and beyond all elaboration—he felt that were he to try to explain this to anyone else, they would be unable to understand it. So he resolved to remain in samadhi, alone in the forest. After he had remained in samadhi for forty-nine days, the god Indra, who was an emanation of a bodhisattva, appeared in front of the Buddha and offered him a white conch shell with its spiral going clockwise as an offering to encourage the Buddha to teach. It was in response to that first offering that the Buddha decided to turn the dharmachakra, or to teach the dharma.

The second auspicious substance is yogurt. This is connected with the Buddha's teaching that in order to practice dharma properly we need to abandon or transcend two extremes in lifestyle or conduct. One of these extremes is hedonism, in which your goal and your endeavor is to seek as much pleasure as possible—including the acquisition of fine clothes, fine food, and so on. The problem with this extreme is that, if it becomes your goal or obsession, it leaves no time or energy for the practice of dharma. But we also need to abandon the other extreme, which is mortification of the body,<sup>26</sup> because the attempt to attain something through tormenting or depriving your physical body of what it needs does not lead to awakening, and in fact can slow down your progress towards the development of profound wisdom. In order to show by example that it is necessary to abandon the extreme of hedonism, the Buddha left the palace of his father, who was a king, and lived for six years on the banks of the Naranjana River in conditions of utmost austerity. But in order to show that one must also abandon the extreme of mortification, he accepted immediately before his awakening an offering of a mixture of yogurt and extremely condensed milk, which was given to him by a Brahmin woman named Lekshe. Immediately upon his consuming this offering of yogurt, all of the marks and signs of physical perfection which adorn the body of a buddha, which had become somewhat indistinct during his years of austerity, immediately became distinct and resplendent.

The third auspicious substance is durva grass, which was offered to the Buddha by the grass-cutter and seller Tashi—meaning auspicious—shortly before his awakening, from which he made the mat-like seat on which he sat at the time of his awakening.

The fourth auspicious substance is vermilion. The origin of the auspiciousness of vermilion is this: When the Buddha was in the process of

attaining awakening or just about to attain it, Mara appeared and, exhibiting various sorts of unpleasant magical displays in order to obstruct the Buddha, finally challenged him, saying, “You cannot attain awakening; you cannot do this.” In response to which the Buddha said, “Yes, I can, because I have completed the two accumulations over three periods of innumerable eons.” In response, Mara said, “Well, who is your witness? Who can you bring to prove this?”—in response to which the Buddha extended his right hand down past his right knee and touched the earth. The goddess of the earth then appeared out of the earth and, offering the Buddha vermilion, said, “I serve as witness that he has completed the two accumulations throughout these three periods of innumerable eons.”

The fifth auspicious substance is bilva fruit. The origin of the auspiciousness of this fruit is that when the Buddha, while living in the palace compound of his father, the king of the Shakyas, first observed the sufferings of birth, aging, sickness, and death and resolved to attain freedom from them, he initially went to the root of a tree and practiced meditation there. During that time he developed a perfect state of shamatha, in acknowledgment of which the goddess or spirit of the tree offered him a bilva fruit.

The sixth auspicious substance is a mirror. The origin of the auspiciousness of the mirror is that when the Buddha had received and consumed the yogurt which he was offered by the Brahmin woman Lekshe, his physical form, which had become emaciated from his six years of austerity, was restored to its full vigor and majesty, causing the thirty-two marks and eighty signs of physical perfection to be vivid and apparent, in response to which the goddess of form—which in this instance appears to be a goddess of the desire realm gods—appeared in front of the Buddha and offered him a mirror so that he could witness his own physical majesty and splendor.

The seventh auspicious substance is called *gavam*, a medicinal substance that is derived from some part of the body of the elephant—possibly from the elephant’s gall bladder. It is auspicious because it commemorates an occasion long after the Buddha’s awakening when the Buddha’s cousin, Devadata—who was always attempting to kill or otherwise harm the Buddha and had been doing so for many lives because he was afflicted with great jealousy of the Buddha—finally attempted to assassinate the Buddha by sending a mad elephant running out into the path where the Buddha was walking. The Buddha emanated ten lions from his ten fingers, which

slowed the elephant down. The elephant then bowed to the Buddha and offered himself, including his body, to the Buddha. Since *givam*, which is an effective medicine, comes from the body of an elephant, it commemorates that occasion in which the Buddha conquered the aggression of the mad elephant.

The eighth auspicious substance is white mustard seed, which was offered to the Buddha by Vajrapani on one of the fifteen days during the Buddha's period of exhibition of miracles. At one time during the Buddha's lifetime there were six prominent non-Buddhist religious teachers in India. At one point they gathered together and, in order to attempt to discredit the Buddha, they challenged him to a competition of miracles. The Buddha accepted,<sup>27</sup> and the competition occurred at the beginning of what is now the first month of the Tibetan and Asian calendars. The Buddha's exhibition of miracles occurred from the first to the fifteenth day of the first lunar month. For the first eight days, the six other religious teachers competing were still present, but on the eighth day the Buddha scared them off in the following way: From the Buddha's throne the bodhisattva Vajrapani, accompanied by five fearsome *rakshasas*, emerged. Seeing that, the six *tirtika* teachers ran off as fast as they could and did not come back. For the remaining week the Buddha exhibited miracles alone without any competition. When Vajrapani emerged from the Buddha's throne, he offered the Buddha white mustard seed, which therefore commemorates this occasion.

These eight auspicious substances are seemingly common things, but they have great auspicious significance because each of them commemorates a specific occasion connected with the arising of dharma in this world, its teaching, its increase, and the demonstration of its power and benefit.

The second set of offerings are the eight auspicious signs or marks.<sup>28</sup> The marks or shapes of these items resemble the shapes of particular parts of the Buddha's body, and have therefore come to serve as emblems of the buddhadharma. The first of these, which I mentioned yesterday, is the parasol. The round shape of the parasol is like the beautifully round shape of the Buddha's head.

The second sign or symbol is the auspicious fish; the shape of the fish represents the shape of the Buddha's eyes when his eyes were half-closed in the posture of meditation. The third is the auspicious vase, which represents the Buddha's throat, in part because of the shape of his neck, but also

because out of the throat of the Buddha emerges the sacred dharma which, like the ambrosia from a precious vase, satisfies all the needs of beings, assuages the thirst of samsara, removes suffering, brings happiness, and is inexhaustible.

The fourth is the auspicious conch, which in this case represents the speech of the Buddha. The conch is used as a musical instrument and as a horn to call people from a great distance. It is famous as having a resounding and clear sound. In the same way, the Buddha's speech is always of an appropriate volume and melody. If you are sitting close to the Buddha, his voice does not sound too loud, but if you are sitting very far away from him you can still hear it.

The fifth is the precious victory banner. The precious victory banner represents the fitting and beautiful quality of the Buddha's form in general, which is perfectly proportioned. All of his body parts are the right size for the rest of his body; it is not as though he has a huge head and his arms are too short or his legs are too short or anything like that. His body is perfectly proportioned.

The sixth one is the glorious knot,<sup>29</sup> which represents the Buddha's heart or mind. This doesn't mean that he literally has the design of the glorious knot on his chest. It means that his mind or his heart knows everything completely and clearly, without limitation.

The seventh is the lotus, which represents the tongue of the Buddha, which is supple, fine, and slender. With it he can speak clearly. In whatever he wants to say his enunciation is perfect; also his tongue and saliva improve the taste of all food.

The eighth is the auspicious wheel, which is actually found as a design on the soles of the Buddha's feet—the image of a golden wheel. This represents his turning of the wheel of the dharma, by means of which beings are liberated.<sup>30</sup>

Because these eight marks or signs are images that naturally occur on a buddha's body or resemble certain qualities of the Buddha, then they have become embodiments in and of themselves of auspiciousness and goodness. Therefore, it is believed that to keep them in your home, or to wear them on your body, brings auspiciousness. In this sadhana, we offer them and by offering them we accumulate great merit, through which inauspicious circumstances that inhibit the dharma practice of the practitioner, and of beings in general, are averted.

The third set of offerings in this section of the practice are the seven

articles of royalty, which are, literally speaking, things [and types of animals and people] that are always found in the entourage of a chakravartin, a monarch who rules over an entire world or universe. As I mentioned yesterday, they correspond internally to the seven limbs of the path of awakening, which are seven qualities that all buddhas and bodhisattvas possess as factors of their attaining awakening. The first of the seven articles of royalty is the precious jewel, which corresponds to the virtue of faith. A bodhisattva must possess abundant and excellent faith to serve as ground for the development of all good qualities. The meaning of this is that if one has faith, then all other qualities, such as meditative stability, diligence, insight into the meaning of dharma and so on, will definitely arise, and on the basis of their arising, one will be able to eradicate all that is to be transcended or abandoned.

The second branch of awakening is knowledge or insight, *prajna*. Of the seven articles of royalty, this knowledge corresponds to the precious wheel, which enables the chakravartin to be victorious against any kind of invasion or warfare. In the same way, it is knowledge, or *prajna*, that enables one to conquer the *kleshas* and ignorance.<sup>31</sup>

The third branch of awakening is *samadhi* or meditative absorption, which serves as the necessary ground for knowledge or *prajna*. If *prajna* is grounded in *samadhi*, then it will be stable, tranquil, effective, and appropriate or correct. If it is not grounded in *samadhi* then *prajna* goes off the track, becomes incorrect and runs wild, so that it actually is more of a problem than a benefit. The third article of royalty is the consort of the monarch. The consort serves to keep the monarch on track, to pacify and tame the monarch. So therefore, the consort corresponds to *samadhi*.

The fourth branch of awakening is joy, which arises from the correct presence and application of both *samadhi* and *prajna*. Joy here refers, for example, to the joy of the attainment of the first bodhisattva level, which is called the Utterly Joyful. Of the seven articles of royalty, joy corresponds to the precious minister. In most enumerations this is a minister who gives wise council to the monarch and therefore promotes joy. Sometimes it is also called the precious householder, which is the subject of the monarch who also brings appropriate advice.

The fifth limb of awakening is diligence and this corresponds to the precious excellent horse. Just as an excellent horse enables the monarch to travel anywhere they wish to go with great speed, in the same way the possession of diligence enables the bodhisattva to cultivate the qualities of

samadhi and prajna, and, through cultivating them, to eradicate the kleshas and to increase all positive qualities.

The sixth article of royalty is the precious elephant. The significance of this elephant is that it is extremely peaceful and tame, so it represents, from among the seven limbs of awakening, the faculty of mindfulness, which is a mind kept tranquil and always consciously aware of what is going on in the mind and what one's actions are.

The seventh and last limb of awakening is equanimity, a state of mind in which the bodhisattva is free from the afflictions of attachment to some things and aversion to other things. Through the faculty of equanimity, the bodhisattva overcomes the warfare of the kleshas. Of the seven articles of royalty, it is represented by the precious general, because the precious general overcomes all warfare and aggression. So these are the seven articles of royalty, which are offered as symbols of the seven limbs or factors of awakening.

Externally one is symbolically offering the seven articles of royalty, but internally one is offering the seven limbs of awakening. Offering the seven limbs of awakening means cultivating these virtues within oneself. By cultivating them within oneself, one enters the true and genuine path leading to awakening, which is the most pleasing of all things to all buddhas and bodhisattvas. The cultivation of these and other virtues is the ultimate or true offering to buddhas and bodhisattvas, which is why they are offered at this point.

Next we come to the visualization that accompanies the repetition of the mantra. In the text it says to visualize in the center of the heart of oneself as the Medicine Buddha, and in the heart of the front visualization of the Medicine Buddha, the seed syllable HUM surrounded by the garland of the mantra. In detail, one visualizes a moon disc—a disc of white light that represents the moon—lying flat in the very center of one's body at the level of the heart. Standing upright upon this disk is visualized the seed syllable of the deity, a blue HUM, which represents the deity's mind or wisdom. Surrounding the HUM is visualized the garland of the mantra from which rays of light will emanate and so forth.<sup>32</sup>

**The HUNG in the heart of the self and front visualizations is surrounded by the mantra garland.**

**TAYATA OM BEKENDZE BEKENDZE MAHA BEKENDZE  
RADZA SAMUDGATE SO HA**



Having visualized the moon disc, the HUM syllable, and the mantra garland in the heart of both the self and front visualizations, you then think that from the syllable HUM and the mantra garland in the heart of the self-visualization rays of multicolored light shoot out towards the front visualization. These rays of light strike the heart of the front visualization, arousing its nonconceptual compassion and causing rays of multicolored light to emerge from the mantra garland and syllable HUM in its heart, which proceed to the eastern pure realm of the Medicine Buddha, called the Light of Vaidurya. On the tips of each of these multicolored rays of light are offering goddesses who make innumerable offerings to the Medicine Buddha, the seven other medicine buddhas, the sixteen bodhisattvas, and so on. These offerings serve to arouse their compassion; to remind them of their promises, vows, and aspirations to benefit beings; and to cause them to release their blessings.

The blessings of their body take the form of innumerable forms of the Medicine Buddha and his retinue—huge ones, tiny ones, and every size in between. These innumerable forms of the principal Medicine Buddha, the other medicine buddhas, and the bodhisattvas, rain down and dissolve into you as the self-visualization and into the front visualization, granting you the blessings of the body of the Medicine Buddha and his retinue.

At the same time, the blessing of their speech is emitted in the form of the mantra garlands, which in this case are multicolored. Mantra garlands of various colors rain down from the pure realms of the Medicine Buddha and dissolve into you as the Medicine Buddha and into the front visualization, granting you the blessings of their speech.

Finally, the blessing of their mind, which strictly speaking has no form, is for the purpose of this visualization embodied in the form of what is held in the Medicine Buddha's hands—the arura and the begging bowls filled with ambrosia. These are emitted and rain down and dissolve into you as the Medicine Buddha and into the front visualization, granting you the blessing of their mind.

If you can visualize clearly, it is best to do all of this very slowly and gradually. While you continue to say the mantra, you think that rays of light emerge from the self-visualization, go to the front visualization, and then from the front visualization outwards to the pure realms, proceeding gradually and slowly. Especially when the blessings of body, speech, and mind rain down upon and dissolve into you, you can do the visualizations

in sequence: first, visualizing the blessings of body raining down, without being in any kind of a hurry and so quite distinctly; and then visualizing the blessings of speech and then the blessings of mind. If you find that the visualization is extremely unclear, if you wish, you can do it all at once. But if you do it gradually and slowly, you will find that you will get a much stronger sense of the blessings actually entering into you. By taking your time with the visualization, you will develop real confidence, a real feeling of the blessings entering into you.

When you receive the blessing of the Medicine Buddha, and of buddhas and bodhisattvas in general, various unpleasant things—obstacles, sickness, demonic disturbances—will be pacified, and compassion, faith, devotion, insight, and so on will flourish and increase. In order to practice the descent of blessing most effectively, it is a good idea to focus the blessings on whatever is afflicting you most at that time. For example, if you are having a particular physical problem—an illness or some other physical problem—or a particular mental problem—a particular klesha, a particular type of stress, or particular worries—you can focus the absorption of the blessings of the buddhas and bodhisattvas on that. You can focus it on the removal of wrongdoing and obscurations in general, but focus it especially on what you regard as your greatest concern at the moment. For example, you may feel that you lack a specific quality: If you feel that you lack insight or you lack compassion or you lack faith, then think that the blessing serves to promote that quality that you feel you are most lacking. And feel that through the absorption of these blessings you actually become filled with that quality as though it were a substance that were actually filling your whole body.

Those visualizations are for the usual, formal practice of the Medicine Buddha. In his book *Mountain Dharma: Instructions for Retreat*, Karma Chakme Rinpoche recommends the following visualization for the actual alleviation of sickness. You can visualize yourself as the Medicine Buddha, if you wish, but the main focus is to actually visualize a small form of the Medicine Buddha, no larger than four finger-widths in height, in the actual part of your body that is afflicted. So if it is an illness or pain in the head, visualize a small Medicine Buddha in the head; if it is in the hand, visualize a small Medicine Buddha in the hand; if it is in the foot, then visualize a small Medicine Buddha in the foot. Visualize the Medicine Buddha in that place, and think that from this small but vivid form of the Medicine Buddha rays of light are emitted. These rays of light are not sim-

ply light, which is dry, but liquid light having a quality of ambrosia. This luminous ambrosia or liquid light actually cleanses and removes the sickness and pain—whatever it is. You can do this not only for yourself, by visualizing the Medicine Buddha in the appropriate part of your own body, but you can do it for others as well by visualizing the Medicine Buddha in the appropriate part of their body or bodies. The radiation of rays of light of ambrosia and so on is the same.

This can be applied not only to physical sickness but to mental problems as well. If you want to get rid of a particular type of anxiety or stress or depression or fear or any other kind of unpleasant mental experience, you can visualize the Medicine Buddha seated above the top of your head and think in the same way as before that luminous ambrosia or liquid light emerges from his body, filling your body and cleansing you of any problem, whatever it is.

You might think that all of this sounds a bit childish, but in fact it actually works, and you will find that out if you try it.

Following the repetition of the mantra comes the conclusion of the practice.

**I confess all wrongs and downfalls and dedicate all virtue to  
awakening.**

**May there be the auspiciousness of freedom from sickness,  
harmful spirits, and suffering.**

First is the admission of defects. With an attitude of regret for anything that you have done that is wrong or inappropriate, you simply say, “I confess all wrongs and downfalls.” Immediately after that you dedicate the merit or virtue of the practice to the awakening of all beings saying, “And dedicate all virtue to awakening.” Then you make an auspicious aspiration which focuses your dedication, saying, “Through this dedication of merit, may there be freedom from sickness, harmful spirits, and suffering for all beings.”

Next comes the dissolution of the mandala:

**The wordly ones return to their own places. BENZA MU.  
The jnana and samaya sattvas dissolve into me,  
And I dissolve into the expanse of all goodness, primordial  
purity. E MA HO.**

First a request to depart is addressed to the mundane deities, which is followed by the dissolution of the front and self-visualizations of the wisdom deities. When you say, “Worldly ones return to your own places, *vajramu*,” you think that the ten protectors of the ten directions, the twelve yaksha chieftains, and the four great kings—all mundane deities visualized in the entourage of the front visualization—return to where they would normally reside.<sup>33</sup> That leaves the eight Medicine Buddhas and the sixteen bodhisattvas in the front visualization. These deities, who are the wisdom deities embodying the visualized images of them,<sup>34</sup> dissolve into your heart as the self visualization. Then the self-visualization gradually dissolves into light and then into the expanse of emptiness, at which point you say, “And I dissolve into the expanse of the all-good primordial purity.” At that point you rest your mind in the experience of emptiness.

All yidam practices include two stages: the generation stage and the completion stage. Everything up to this point—the visualization of the forms of the deities, the presentation of offerings and so on, the repetition of the mantra with the accompanying visualizations—are all aspects of the practice of the generation stage. When, subsequent to the dissolution of the visualization, you rest your mind in emptiness, this is the practice of the completion stage. It is through the practice of these two stages that you actually come to realize dharmata, the nature of things. Visualization and other generation stage practices function to weaken the kleshas, while completion stage practices, which include the practices of shamata and vipashyana, serve to eradicate them.

I mentioned yesterday that there are three Medicine Buddha practices that are used in our tradition—a long one, a medium one, and a short one—and that this is the short one. While this is the shortest, it is nevertheless considered the most effective. The long and medium forms of the Medicine Buddha are entirely sutra-oriented in style and content. This practice is a blend of the sutra tradition and the tantric or vajrayana tradition. So while it is the shortest liturgically, it is the most complete because it has the most elaborate visualizations.

In the long and intermediate forms of the Medicine Buddha practice, because they are entirely sutric in approach, there is a preliminary meditation on emptiness, after which you imagine a palace as a residence for the front visualization and then you invite the deities to abide within that. There is not the precise development of the form of the deities, as in this

case, nor is there any self-visualization, because it is entirely sutric. This practice which we are using includes the vajrayana practice of self-visualization and the precise details of the visualization. Therefore, it is considered to be more effective, to have more power.

**Question:** Rinpoche, I was interested in hearing your different elaborations on the “seven articles” of the mandala offering. I have done the mandala offering in my ngöndro practice and there the offerings seem so much more concrete than the descriptions of the same articles we heard from you earlier today. Your descriptions of the “seven articles” of the chakravartin presented them much more as symbolic representations. Are they more concrete in some practices? Are there different practices? Are these different views? Do they come from the sutras, from the commentaries, from the vajrayana? Or do they vary for certain people?

And then I have a particular question about the person of the chakravartin, the universal monarch. We in the West, wrongly or rightly, have the notion that democracy is the best way. I’m just wondering—this chakravartin seems like a wonderful being, yet he or she—you didn’t mention any gender—this person seems to need help with faith, stability, exertion, with many different qualities. We in the West have found that a universal sort of monarch or ruler usually eventually goes wrong. Could you tell me what is different about this chakravartin that is going to make their rule so very successful, because we haven’t had that experience?

**Rinpoche:** With regard to your first question, the correspondence between the “seven articles” of royalty, which are the characteristic possessions of a chakravartin, and the “seven limbs of awakening”—which are necessary resources on the path for bodhisattvas—is a standard one. In cases where the symbolic meaning of offering the “seven articles” of royalty is not explained, it simply means that it is a briefer explanation of the significance of that offering. This correspondence definitely does function in all uses of those things as offering substances or items.

With regard to your second question, the chakravartin only arises in certain periods of history, which are called the best times or the best ages. What distinguishes a chakravartin from some kind of cosmic dictator is the arising of the chakravartin in human society at that point as a solution to problems rather than the beginning of them. A chakravartin arises at a time when there is disputation as to who should lead the society. The chakravartin

him or herself, is not particularly [eager or] anxious to do so, but is altruistic, capable, and acclaimed by the society at large, which places them in their position of authority. Now, it is entirely possible that after the reign of a chakravartin, if a dynasty is established, things could degenerate, as your question indicates. But then they would no longer be chakravartins.

**Question:** So, are you saying there could be a female universal monarch, a chakravartini?

**Rinpoche:** Of course.

**Question:** What is the Sanskrit name of Sangye Menla?

**Translator:** The most common name found in the sutras is *Bhaishajyai Guru*, which means the teacher of medicine. That is translated into Tibetan as *Mengyi Lama*, or *Menla* for short. That's why we call it Sangye Menla or the Medicine Buddha. Menla literally means Medicine Guru.

**Question:** Rinpoche, over and over again you talk about how in a way almost all of these practices are a backdrop for what the real practice is, which is faith and devotion that the practice will actually work. It seems that all practices in a way should be aimed at intensifying that. You say, "intense supplication," and there have been times in my practice when that just came, and I felt a fervor of faith. Then other times I really wished I had it, because I really felt like I needed it. You talk about generating bodhicitta or generating faith. What is the process of generating? I can put the thought in my mind, but if there is also pervasive doubt and pervasive cynicism . . . I come from a kind of culture of doubt and of questioning and of philosophical b.s., so it's very difficult to talk about these concepts with absolute faith. What is the method of generating intense faith?

**Rinpoche:** The approach is to try to develop informed faith. Informed faith comes about through investigation. Through investigating the meaning of dharma you discover valid reasons why it is appropriate to have faith in it. That will naturally make faith a matter of common sense.

**Question:** Rinpoche, what is the translation of the mantra? And when does the visualization of the blessings' coming down in the form of small Medicine Buddhas and the begging bowl and the fruit and the mantra

stop? And when it stops, it's not yet the dissolution, is it? What are we resting in at that point?

**Translator:** You mean after the descent of blessings ends, and before you dissolve the visualization?

**Question:** Right.

**Rinpoche:** The mantra that you recite is basically an elaboration of the name of the Medicine Buddha. It is more or less reciting the name of the Medicine Buddha in Sanskrit. The point at which you stop visualizing the blessings of body, speech, and mind being absorbed into you again and again is up to you. You can continue that visualization for the entire duration of your recitation of the mantra, in which case there is not much in-between that and the dissolution of the mandala. Or from time to time, you can stop visualizing and just rest in devotion. It is not the case that you need to spend absolutely every instant of your mantra recitation dissolving these things into you. As long as there is faith and devotion, then it does not have to be constant.

**Question:** Is this mantra best used for animals that are dying, and what about animals that might have just recently died, perhaps quickly?

**Rinpoche:** It will also benefit an animal that has recently died; it is going to be most effective, of course, if it is used just before the animal dies. But it will still benefit them afterwards.

**Question:** Rinpoche, thank you for the teaching. Given the aspirations of the Medicine Buddha, would it be appropriate to have a representation of the Medicine Buddha in the heart of the house, the family room, and particularly if the rest of one's family thinks the mother is completely strange. [laughter] And I've been told to recite *om mani peme hung* around dying and dead animals. Would it be more appropriate to recite the Medicine Buddha mantra?

**Rinpoche:** Reciting *om mani peme hung* or the Medicine Buddha's name or mantra to a dying animal will have pretty much equal benefit, so it is up to you. Both Avalokiteshvara and the Medicine Buddha have made specific aspirations to be of benefit to beings in that way. It does not matter, either one. With regard to your first question: While placing a large and prominent image of the Medicine Buddha in the very center of your home would ultimately have long-term benefits for the members of your family, it might, as your question indicates, create more problems in the short-term. Specifi-

cally, it might create more resistance. It would probably be better to allow your family to encounter the Medicine Buddha sort of incidentally, rather than having it thrust in their face.

**Question:** A small thangka on the wall, would that be better?

**Rinpoche:** If it does not cause disharmony within the home, then of course that would be fine. If it does, then it would be better that they encounter it somewhere outside the home.

We're going to stop here for this morning and conclude with the dedication of merit.



Page 68 blank

## PART TWO

---

### THE MEDICINE BUDDHA SADHANA

*Bhagavat, who is compassionate equally to all beings,  
The very hearing of whose name pacifies the three lower states,  
Medicine Buddha, who eliminates the illnesses of the three  
poisons,  
May there be the goodness of the Vaidurya Light.  
May sentient beings, whatever illnesses they suffer,  
Be liberated quickly from those illnesses.  
May all the illnesses of beings, without exception,  
Forever not arise.*

*May medicines be effective,  
And may the intentions of the recitations of the secret mantra  
path be accomplished.  
May demoneses, cannibal demons, and so forth  
Attain compassionate mind.*





༦༩། །དགོངས་གཏེར་ལྷགས་ཀྱིས་སྒོང་གསལ་ལྱིུར་རྒྱན་གནམ་ཚོས་ཉིད་ནས་ལུང་དུ་བསྐྱིགས་པ་སྤྲུག་སྤྲིའོ་ག།  
A Sadhana of Menla, Compiled from the Clear Expanse of Mind, A Mind Treasure  
Found within the Sky of Dharma Texts and Called:

བེད་ཅུ་འི་ལྷ་རྒྱུན་བལྟུགས་སོ།།

A STREAM OF LAPIS LAZULI

### *Introduction to the Practice*

ཨོཾ་མ་པཱ་ཀཱ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ཡེ། འདི་ལ་འཛོམ་ན་སྐྱེ་ན་འི་ཞལ་ཐང་མདུན་དུ་ཞི་བའི་མཚོན་པ་མཚུལ་སོགས་ཅི་འབྱེར་བ་ཤ

མས་པས་ཚོགས་རྫོགས།

Namo. Maha Bekandzeya. If they are available, arrange in front of a Menla thangka as many peaceful offerings as you can, such as a mandala and so forth. In this way the accumulations are completed.

མེད་ན་སྐྱེ་བ་སྐྱེད་ན་མ་མཁར་གམི་ཤེས། ལཚོན་པ་ཡིད་གྱིས་སྤུལ་ཚོགས་ཅི་ཡང་ལི་དགོས་སོ། །འདི་བླ་མེད་ལུ  
གས་ཡིན་པས་

If these are not available, it is enough to make mental offerings while imagining the front visualisation in the sky—nothing else is needed. Since this is the anutaratantra,

འདོན་མཁན་ཤུལ་སྤང་བ་དང་སྐྱེ་བ་དང་ཚབ་སོགས་གཙུག་ལྷན་གྱི་དགོས་པ། འོན་ཀྱང་འདི་འདྲི་དབང་ལུང་ཞི་ངེས་པར་ཐོབ་དགོས་ཏེ།

the practitioner need not refrain from meat and alcohol nor perform the rituals of purification, such as taking the blessing of pure water. It is definitely necessary, however, to receive the empowerment and reading transmission for this practice,

བླ་མེད་གསལ་སྤྲེལ་ལུགས་ཡིན་པའི་ཕྱིར་རོ། བདག་མདུན་དུས་གཚོགས་པ་བསྐྱེད་པ་རྙིང་མའི་ལུགས་ཡིན་པས་  
སོ་སོར་མི་དགོས་སོ།

as it belongs to the anutara tradition. Since it belongs to the Nyingma tradition, the self and frontal visualisations are simultaneously generated; it is not necessary to create them separately.

རྟེན་མ་གྱི་བསྐྱོར་ཡིན་པས་ཚོག་དོན་ཡིད་གྱིས་བསྐྱོར་ཞིང་།

As it is chanted meditation of the Nyingma, your mind should meditate on the meaning of the words.

༄༅། །གསོལ་འདེབས་ནི།

*The Supplication*

ནམ་གླིང་ལྗོངས་མཁའ་རྒྱུ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་།

NAMO BEKENDZE MAHA RADZAYE

།བསོད་ནམས་ཡོན་ཏན་རྒྱ་མཚོའི་གཏེར་མངའ་ཞིང་།

SÖ NAM YÖN TEN GYA TSHÖ TER NGA ZHING  
You are endowed with an oceanic treasury of qualities and merit;

།བསམ་གྱིས་མེ་ལྷུང་ལྷགས་རྗེའི་བྱིན་རླབས་གྱིས།

SAM GYI MI KHYAB THUK JEY JIN LAP KYI  
By the blessing of your inconceivable compassion

།འགྲོ་བའི་སྤུག་བསྐྱེད་ལྡན་པའི་མཛད་པ།

DRO WAY DUK NGEL DUNG WA SHI DZE PA  
You calm the suffering and torment of sentient beings.

བེན་དུ་ཡི་འོད་ལ་གསོལ་བ་འདེབས།

BEN DUR YA YI Ö LA SOL WA DEB  
I supplicate you, Light of Lapis Lazuli

ཤིན་ཏུ་མེད་སྣང་གཏོས་རབ་བཅིང་བས།

SHIN TU SER NA DRAK PÖ RAB CHING PE  
Those bound by very intense greed

ཡི་དཀ་ས་གནས་སུ་སྐྱེ་བའི་སྐྱེ་བོ་ཡིས།

YI DAK NE SU KYE WAY KYE WO YI  
Are born in the hungry ghost realm.

ཁྱོད་མཚན་ཐོས་ན་མིར་སྐྱེ་སྐྱིན་པ་དགའ།

KHYÖ TSHEN THÖ NA MIR KYE JIN PA GA  
If they hear your name, they're born human and take delight in generosity.

བཅོམ་ལྷན་སྐྱོན་གྱི་བླ་ལ་གསོལ་བ་འདེབས།

CHOM DEN MEN GYI LA LA SOL WA DEB  
I supplicate you, victorious Menla.

ཁྱོད་ལ་ཁྱིམ་ས་འཆལ་དང་གཞན་ལ་གསལ་གྱི་བརྩོན་པས།

TSHÜL THRIM CHAL DANG ZHEN LA SHE TSÖN PE  
Violating morality and abusing others,

།དམ་མཁའ་བར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འཛོལ་འདྲི་དག་གིས།

NYAL WAR KYE WAY DRO WA DI DAK GI  
Being are born in the hell realms.

།ཁྱོད་མཚན་ཐོས་ན་ཐོ་རིས་སྐྱེ་བར་གསུངས།

KHYÖ TSHEN THÖ NA THO RI KYE WAR SUNG  
Hearing your name, they'll be born in the higher realms, it is said.

།སྐྱོན་གྱི་རྒྱལ་པོ་དེ་ལ་གསོལ་བ་འདེབས།

MEN GYI GYEL PO DE LA SOL WA DEB  
I supplicate you, King of Medicine.

།གང་དག་དབྱེན་དང་ཕྱ་མདུ་མ་ཡིས།

GANG DAK YEN DANG THRA MA DU MA YI  
Whoever by repeated dissension and slander

།རབ་རྩ་འབྲེད་ཅིང་ལུས་སྲོག་ལྷལ་བ་དག།

RAB TU JE CHING LÜ SOK THRAL WA DAK  
creates deep schisms and takes life,

།ཁྱོད་མཚན་ཐོས་ན་དེ་དག་འཚོ་མི་རྒྱས།

KHYÖ TSHEN THÖ NA DE DAK TSHE MI NÜ  
Hearing your name, they cannot harm others.



མེན་གྱི་རྒྱལ་པོ་དེ་ལ་གསོལ་བ་འདེབས།

MEN GYI GYEL PO DE LA SOL WA DEB  
I supplicate you, King of Medicine

མཚན་ལེགས་གསེར་བཟང་དྲི་མེད་སྣང་བ་དང།

TSHEN LEK SER ZANG DRI ME NANG WA DANG  
Excellent Name, Appearance of the Stainless Fine Gold,

ལྷ་ངན་མེད་མཚོག་དཔལ་དང་ཚོས་བསྐྱགས་དབྱངས།

NYA NGEN ME CHOK PEL DANG CHÖ YANG  
Glorious Supreme One Free of Misery, Resounding Dharma Melody,

མངོན་མཐོན་རྒྱལ་པོ་སྐྱ་དབྱངས་རྒྱལ་པོ་དང།

NGÖN KHYEN GYEL PO DRA YANG GYEL PO DANG  
King of Direct Knowledge, King of Melody,

ཤཱཀྱ་འི་རྒྱལ་པོ་རྣམས་ལ་གསོལ་བ་འདེབས།

SHAKYAY GYEL PO NAM LA SOL WA DEB  
and King of Shakyas, supplicate you all.

འཇམ་དཔལ་སྐྱབས་གྲོལ་ཕྱག་ན་དྲེ་འཛོལ།

JAM PEL KHYAB DRÖL CHALK NA DOR JE DZIN  
Manjushri, Kyapdro, and Vajrapani

།དམ་ཚེས་སློབ་གསུང་མཚན་ལ་གསོལ་བ་འདེབས།

DAM CHÖ LEK WAM TSHOK LA SOL WA DEB  
I supplicate all the volumes of the genuine Dharma,

།བོ་དྷི་སཏྱ་ཐུ་ཐོང་ལྷེ་ཏུ་བཅོན་སོགས།

BO DHI SA TO THRI SONG DEU TSEN SOK  
Bodhisattva Shantarakshita, Trisong Deutsen, and others,

།ལོ་པེན་རྒྱལ་སློབ་བྱང་རྒྱལ་སེམས་དཔལ་དང།

LO PEN GYEL LÖN JANG CHUP SEM PA DANG  
translators, scholars, kings, ministers, bodhisattvas,

།བརྒྱུད་པའི་སློབ་དམ་པ་ཐམས་ཅད་དང།

GYÜ PAY LA MA DAM PA THAM CHE DANG  
and all genuine lamas of the lineage,

།ཚོས་གྱི་དབང་ཕྱག་སོགས་ལ་གསོལ་བ་འདེབས།

CHÖ KYI WANG CHUK SOK LA SOL WA DEB  
Powerful One of the Dharma, and others, I supplicate you.

།དེ་ལྟར་གསོལ་བ་བཏབ་པའི་བྱིན་རླབས་གྱིས།

DE TAR SOL WA TAB PAY JIN LAP KYI  
Through the blessing of this supplication,

ཁགས་སྐབས་ནང་དང་འཇིགས་པ་སྣ་ཚོ་གསལ་ནི།

NE KAP NE DANG JIK PA NA TSHOK ZHI  
may all variety of disease and dangers of this life be pacified.

འཚེ་ཚོ་ངན་སོང་འཇིགས་པ་ཀུན་ཉེ་ནས།

CHI TSE NGEN SONG JIK PA KÜN ZHI NE  
At death, may all fear of the lower realms be allayed.

ཁདེ་བ་ཅན་དུ་སྐྱེ་བར་བྱིན་གྱིས་རྫོབས།

DE WA CHEN DU KYE WAR JIN GYI LOP  
Grant your blessing that we are then born in Sukhavati.

*Refuge and Bodhicitta*

ན་མོཾ་ དགོན་མཚོག་གསུམ་དང་རྩ་བ་གསུམ་མོཾ་

NAMO KÖN CHOK SUM DANG TSA WA SUM  
To the sources of refuge, the three jewels

སྐྱབས་གནས་རྣམས་ལ་སྐྱབས་སུ་མཚོཾ་

KYAB NE NAM LA KYAB SU CHI  
and the three roots, I go for refuge.

འགྲོ་སྤྱོད་སངས་རྒྱལ་ལ་འགོད་ཕྱིར།

DRO KÜN SANG GYE LA GÖ CHIR  
To establish all beings in Buddhahood,

བྱང་རྒྱལ་མཚོ་གཏུ་སེམས་བསྐྱེད་དོ།

JANG CHUB CHOK TU SEM KYE DO  
I awaken the mind of supreme enlightenment.

*Repeat three times.*

ཀ་དག་ཀློང་ནས་སྤྱལ་པ་ཡི།

KA DAK LONG NE TRÜL PA YI  
From the expanse of primordial purity come forth

གནམ་ས་གང་བའི་མཚོད་པའི་སྤྱིན།

NAM SA GANG WAY CHÖ PAY TRIN  
clouds of offerings filling the earth and sky

མཛུལ་རྒྱལ་སྤྱིད་ལྷ་མོར་བཅས།

MEN DEL GYEL SI LHA MOR CHE  
With mandalas, articles of royalty, and goddesses.

ཟད་མེད་གྲུར་ཅིག་ཕུང་ཅོཾ

ZE ME GYUR CHIK PUD DZA HO  
May they never be exhausted. PUD DZA HO.

འགོ་གྲུན་བདེ་ལྡན་སྤྲུག་བསྐྱེད་བྱ་ལཾ

DRO KÜN DE DEN DUK NGEL DREL  
May all beings be happy and free of suffering.

བདེ་ལས་ཉམས་མེད་བཏང་སྣོན་ལོག་ལཾ

DE LE NYAM ME TANG NYOM SHOK  
May their happiness not diminish. May they abide in equanimity.

ཨོཾ་སྐྱ་བུ་མ་ཕུརྒྱུ་མཐོང་སྐྱ་བུ་མ་ཕུརྒྱུ་ཉཾཾ

OM SOBHAWA SHUDDHA SARWA DHARMA SOBHAWA SHUDDHO HAM

### *The Visualisation*

སྣོང་པ་ཉིད་དུ་གྲུར་ལཾ

TONG PA NYI DU GYUR  
Everything becomes emptiness.

སྟོང་པའི་དང་ལས་སྟོང་གསུམ་འདི་

TONG PAY NGANG LE TONG SUM DI  
From its depth, this triple universe becomes

ལྷན་སྤྱལ་གཞི་ལྗོངས་དུ་གྱུར་པའི་ནང་དུ།

TA NA DUK GYI PHO DRANG DU GYUR PAY NGANG DU  
the Exquisite Palace, where

མང་གའི་ཁྱིམ་པད་ཟླ་མེ་མའི་སྟོང་དུ།

SENG GEY THRI PE DA SO SÖ TENG DU  
on lion thrones, each with a lotus and moon disk on top

རང་ཉིད་དང་མདུན་བསྐྱེད་ཀྱི་གཙོ་བོའི་ས་བོན་རྩྭ་མཐིང་ཁ་ལས།

RANG NYI DANG DÜN KYE KYI TSO WÖ SA BÖN HUNG THING KHA  
LE

Appear deep blue HUNGS, the seed syllable of myself and the main figure visualized in  
the front,

སྐྱེན་སྲུ་སྐྱེ་མདོག་བྱིའུ་ལྷ་བུ་འོད་ཟེར་འཕྲོ་བའི་སྐྱེན་ཅན།

MEN LA KU DOK BE DUR YA TABU Ö ZER THRO WAY KU CHEN  
from which arises Menla, his body is the color of lapis lazuli and radiating light.

ཚོས་གོས་གསུམ་གྱིས་བསྐྱབས་པའམ།

CHÖ GÖ SUM GI LUP PA  
He is clothed in the three Dharma robes.

ཕྱག་གཡམ་མཚོག་གླིང་ཨ་རུ་ར་དང་།

CHAK YE CHOK JIN A RU RA DANG  
His right hand in the mudra of supreme generosity holds an arura.

གཡོན་མཉམ་བཞག་ལྷུང་བཟེད་འཛིན་པའམ།

YÖN NYAM ZHAG LHUNG ZE DZIN PA  
His left hand in meditation mudra holds a begging bowl.

མཚོན་དཔེ་རྫོགས་ཤིང་དོན་རྫོགས་སྤྱིལ་ཀྱང་གོས་བཞུགས་པའམ།

TSEN PE DZOK SHING DOR JE KYIL TRUNG GI ZHUK PA  
With the major and minor marks complete, he sits in the vajra posture.

ཁྱད་པར་དུ་མདུན་བསྐྱེད་གྱི་འདབ་མ་རྣམས་ལ།

KHYE PAR DU DÜN KYE KYI DAB MA NAM LA  
In particular, on the lotus petals of the front visualisation

སྐབ་དབང་ལ་མོགས་པའི་སངས་རྒྱལ་བདུན་དང་ཚོས་བུ་སྟེ།

THUB WANG LA SOK PAY SANG GYE DÜN DANG CHÖ PU TI  
are the seven Buddhas, Shakyamuni and the others, and Dharma texts.

དེ་རྒྱལ་སེམས་དཔའ་བཅུ་དྲུག་མཆོག་མཆོག་།

DE GYAB SEM PA CHU DRUK  
Surrounding them are the sixteen bodhisattvas,

དེ་རྒྱལ་འཇིག་རྟེན་སྦྱོང་བ་བཅུ་དང་།

DE GYAB JIK TEN KYONG WA CHU DANG  
surrounding them are the ten protectors of the world,

ལྔ་དཔོན་ཆེན་པོ་བཅུ་གཉིས་སོ་སོའི་འཁོར་དང་བཅས་པ་མཆོག་།

DE PÖN CHEN PO CHU NYI SO SÖ KHOR DANG CHE PA  
and the twelve great chiefs with their respective retinues.

སློ་བཞི་ལ་རྒྱལ་པོ་ཆེན་པོ་བཞི་དང་བཅས་པ་འཇིག་།

GO ZHI LA GYEL PO CHEN PO ZHI DANG CHE PAY  
The Four Great Kings are at the four gates.

གནས་གསུམ་ཡི་གོ་གསུམ་དང་ལྷགས་ཀའི་རྩྭ་ལས་འོད་འཕྲོས་པ་མཆོག་།

NE SUM YI GE SUM DANG THUK KAY HUNG LE Ö ZER ZER THRÖ  
PE  
From the three syllables in their three places and the HUNG in their hearts, lights  
radiate,



ཤར་ཕྱོགས་ཀྱི་སངས་རྒྱལ་སོ་སོའི་ཁིང་ཁམས་ནས།

SHAR CHOK KYI SANG GYE SO SÖ ZING KHAM NE  
invoking from the eastern Buddha realms,

ཡི་ཤེས་པ་དཔག་ཏུ་མེད་པ་སྐུ་བྲངས་ནས་བདག་མདུན་རྣམས་ལ་ཐིམ་པར་གྱུར།

YE SHE PA PAK TU ME PA CHEN DRANG NE DAK DÜN NAM LA  
THIM PAR GYUR  
countless wisdom deities which dissolve into myself and the one visualized in front.

ཧུང་། མེན་ལ་མཚེད་བརྒྱད་ལྷ་ཚོ་གསལ་མ་ལུས་རྣམས།

HUNG MEN LA CHE GYE LHA TSOK MA LÜ NAM

HUNG The eight Menla brothers and all deities without exception

གནས་འདིར་སྐུ་འདེན་བྱིན་ཚེན་དབབ་དུ་གསོལ།

NE DIR CHEN DREN JIN CHEN WAB TU SOL

I invite here to this place. Please rain upon us your great blessings.

སྐལ་ལྷན་དད་ལྷན་བདག་ལ་དབང་མཚོ་གསལ།

KAL DEN DE DEN DAK LA WANG CHOK KUR

Bestow the supreme empowerment on those who are worthy and faithful.

ལོག་འདྲེན་ཚོལ་བར་ཚད་བསལ་དུ་གསོལ།

LOK DREN TSHE YI BAR CHE SEL DU SOL  
Dispel false guides and obstacles to long life.

ནམ་མཁུ་བློ་རྩེ་སཔ་འི་སྤར་བཟོ་སམ་ཡེ་ཇོ་ཇོ།

NAMO MAHA BEKENDZE SAPARI WARA BENZA SAMAYA DZA DZA

བཟོ་སམ་ཡེ་ཏེ་ལྷན།

BENZE SAMAYA TIKTRA LEN *(Offering)*

ཨོཾ་ཧུང་ཏཱ་མའི་ཧཱུྃ།

OM HUNG TRAM HRI AH *(Receive the blessing)*

ཨ་བློ་ཏཱ་མའི་ཧཱུྃ།

ABHIKENTSA HUNG

རྫོང་།

HUNG  
HUNG

མེ་ཏོག་བདུག་གྲོ་སམ་མེ་དྲི།

ME TOK DUK PÖ MAR ME DRI  
Flowers, incense, lights, scents,

ཞལ་ཟས་རོལ་མོལ་སོགས་དང་།

གཟུགས་སྐྱའི་རོལ་བྱ་ཚོས་།

ZHEL ZE RÖL MO LA SOK DANG  
CHÖ

ZUG DRA DRI RO REK JA

food, music and so forth, forms, sounds, smells, tastes, touch, and all dharmas,

བདག་གིས་ལྷ་ལ་མཚོད་པ་འབུལ་།

DAK GI LHA LA CHÖ PA BUL  
I offer to the deities.

བདག་ཅག་ཚོགས་གཉིས་ཇོགས་པར་ཤོག་།

DAK CHAK TSHOK NYI DZOK PAR SHOK  
May we perfect the two accumulations.

ཙི་བཙུ་ཅུ་མྱོ་ སྤྱི་ སུ ལྷུ་པེ་ ལྷུ་པེ་ ལྷུ་པེ་ ལྷུ་པེ་ ལྷུ་པེ་ ལྷུ་པེ་

OM BENZRA ARGHAM PADYAM PUPE DHUPE ALOKE GENDHE  
NEWIDYE

(drink water, wash water, flowers, incense, light, perfume, food,

ཤུ་བ་ རུ་བ་ ཤུ་བ་ ལྷུ་པེ་ ར་ས་ ལྷུ་པེ་ ལྷུ་པེ་

SHABDA RUPA SHABDA GENDHE RASA SAPARSHE TRATITSA HUNG  
music, mirror, music, smell, food, touch, each of these HUNG)

ཧཱུྃ།

བཀྲ་ཤིས་གཙོ་བོ་རྗེས་བརྒྱུད་དེ།

HUNG  
HUNG

TRA SHI TSO WO DZE GYE DE  
The eight foremost auspicious substances,

གཙོ་མཚོ་གཟུ་ལ་པོ་ཡུང་ས་དཀར་སོགས།

TSO CHOK GYEL PO YUNG KAR SOK  
the best royal white mustard seed, and the others,

བདག་གིས་ལྷ་ལ་མཚོད་པ་འབུལ།

DAK GI LHA LA CHÖ PA BUL  
I offer to the deity.

ཚོགས་གཉིས་ཡོངས་སུ་རྗེས་པར་ཤིག།

TSHOK NYI YONG SU DZOK PAR SHOK  
May the two accumulations be perfected.

མངྏ་ལམ་འཕན་སྒྲིལ་ཧཱུྃ།

MANGALAM ARTHA SIDDHI HUNG

ཧཱུྃ།

བཀྲ་ཤིས་གཙོ་བོ་རྗེས་བརྒྱུད་དེ།

HUNG  
HUNG

TRA SHI TSO WO TAK GYE DE  
The eight foremost auspicious symbols,

གཙོ་མཚོ་གཟུལ་པོ་བུམ་པ་སོགས།

TSO CHOK GYEL PO BUM PA SOK  
the peerless royal vase and all others,

བདག་གིས་ལྷ་ལ་མཚོན་པ་འབུལ།

DAK GI LHA LA CHÖ PA BUL  
I offer to the deities.

སེམས་ཅན་ཚོ་གས་གཉིས་ཇོ་གས་པར་ཤོག།

SEM CHEN TSOK NYI DZOK PAR SHOK  
May sentient beings perfect the two accumulations.

མདྲེན་ལྷ་མུ་ཏྟེ།

MANGALAM KUMBHA HUNG

ཏྟེ།

འདོད་ཡོན་གཙོ་བོ་རིན་ཆེན་བདུན།

HUNG DÖ YÖN TSO WO RIN CHEN DÜN

HUNG The sources of pleasure, the seven precious articles,

གཙོ་མཚོ་གཟུལ་པོ་ནོར་བུ་སོགས།

TSO CHOK GYEL PO NOR BU SOK  
the most excellent royal one, the jewel, and the others,

བདག་གིས་ལྷ་ལ་མཚོད་པ་འབུལ།

DA GI LHA LA CHÖ PA BUL

I offer to the deity.

བདག་ནི་ཚོགས་གཉིས་ཚོགས་པར་ཤོག།

DAK NI TSHOK NYI DZOK PAR SHOK

May I perfect the two accumulations.

ཨོམ་ཎི་རྣ་ཏུ།

OM MANI RATNA HUNG

ཏུ།

HUNG  
HUNG

ཀུན་གྱི་གོ་བོ་དེ་རི་རབ་གླིང་།

KÜN GYI TSO WO RI RAB LING

The foremost of all, Mount Meru

དེ་རི་རབ་གླིང་བཞི་གླིང་ཕྱན་བཅས་།

RI RAB LING ZHI LING TREN CHE

with its four continents and subcontinents

བདག་གིས་ལྷ་ལ་མཚོད་པ་འབུལ།

DAK GO LHA LA CHÖ PA BUL

I offer to the deity.

ཚོགས་གཉིས་ཡོངས་སུ་རྫོགས་པར་ཤོག།

TSHOK NYI YONG SU DZOK PAR SHOK  
May the two accumulations be perfected.

ཨོཾ་རྩ་མཚུལ་ལྷོ།

OM RATNA MANDALA HUNG

ཨུམ།

བདག་གིས་དེ་ལྷན་དེ་ཆབ་གྱིས།

HUNG  
HUNG

DAK GI DRI DEN DRI CHAB KYI  
With scented water

བདེ་གཤེས་སྐྱེལ་སྐྱེལ་སྐྱེལ་གསོལ།

DE SHEK KU LA KU KHRÜ SOL  
I bathe the sugata's body.

ལྷ་ལ་དེ་མ་མི་མངའ་ཡང་།

LHA LA DRI MA MI NGA YANG  
Although you, the deity, is flawless,

དེ་གསལ་བྱེད་བདག་པའི་དྲེན་འབྲེལ་བགྱི།

DIK DRIB DAK PAY TEN DREL GYI  
this creates the auspicious connection for purifying all wrongs and obscurations.

ཨོམ་སར་ཀ་ཏ་ཐ་ག་ཏ་ཨ་བེ་ཀ་ཏ་ས་མ་ཡ་ཤ་རྩེ་ཧཱུྃ།

OM SARWA TATHAGATA ABIKEKATE SAMAYA SHRIYE HUNG

ཧཱུྃ།

རས་དགར་འཇམ་དྲི་ལྷན་པ་ཡིས།

HUNG  
HUNG

RE KAR JAM DRI DEN PA YI  
With a scented, soft white cloth

རྒྱལ་བའི་རྣམ་ཉིད་ཕྱི་བར་བགྱི།

GYEL WAY KU NYI CHI WAR GYI  
I dry the victor's body.

སྐྱལ་དྲི་མ་མེ་མངའ་ཡང་།

KU LA DRI MA MI NGA YANG  
Though your body is flawless,

སྐྱལ་བ་སྐྱལ་བའི་རྟེན་འབྲེལ་བགྱི།

DUK NGEL DREL WAY TEN DREL GYI  
this creates the auspicious connection for freedom from suffering.

ཨོམ་ཀལ་བེ་ཤུ་ཏ་ཧཱུྃ།

OM KAYA BISHODHANI HUNG



ཏྲིཿ

ན་བཟའ་མཛེས་ལྗན་དུར་སྐྱིག་འདིཿ

HUNG  
HUNG

NA ZA DZE DEN NGUR MIK DI  
With these beautiful saffron robes

རྒྱལ་བའི་རྒྱ་ལ་གསོལ་བར་བགྱིཿ

GYEL WAY KU LA SOL WAR GYI  
I clothe the victor's body.

རྒྱལ་བསོལ་བམི་མངལ་འཕངཿ

KU LA SIL WA MI NGA YANG  
Although your body is never cold,

བཀྲ་གཤམ་དང་སཱ་ཤེལ་བའི་རྗེ་འབྲེལ་བགྱིཿ

TRAK DANG PHEL WAY TEN DREL GYI  
this creates the auspicious connection for vitality to flourish.

ཨོཾ་བཙུན་མ་རྒྱལ་ཏྲིཿ

OM BENZA WAYTRA AH HUNG

ཏྲིཿ

རྒྱུ་མདོག་བེ་དུར་ཡེ་རི་པོ་འདཿ

HUNG  
HUNG

KU DOK BE DUR YA YI RI WO DRA  
Your body is like a mount, the color of lapis lazuli

འགྲོ་བ་སེམས་ཅན་ནད་གྱི་སྤྱད་བསྐྱེལ་སེལ།

DRO WA SEM CHEN NE KYI DUK NGEL SEL  
You dispel the suffering of illness in sentient beings.

བྱང་རྒྱལ་སེམས་དཔའ་བརྒྱད་གྱི་འཁོར་གྱིས་བསྐོར།

JANG CHUB SEM PA GYE KYI KHOR GYI KHOR  
Surrounded by a retinue of eight bodhisattvas,

རིན་ཆེན་སྤྲོན་འཛོལ་ལྷ་ལ་ཕྱག་འཚལ་བསྟོད།

RIN CHEN MEN DZIN LHA LA CHAK TSHAL TÖ  
Holder of Medicine, precious deity, I praise and prostrate to you.

བཚན་ལེགས་རིན་ལྗན་གསེར་བཟང་ལྷ་རྩེ་མེད།

TSHEN LEK RIN DA SER ZANG NYA NGEN ME  
Excellent Name, Precious Moon, Fine Gold, Free of Misery,

ཚོས་བསྐྱགས་ཀྱི་མཚོ་ཚོས་སྤོ་གྲུ་ལྷ་བུ།

CHÖ DRAK GYA TSHO CHÖ LO SHA KYA THUB  
Resounding Dharma Ocean, Dharma Mind, Shakyamuni,

དམ་པའི་ཚོས་དང་སེམས་དཔའ་བཅུ་དྲུག་སོགས།

DAM PAY CHÖ DANG SEM PA CHU DRUK SOK  
The genuine Dharma, the sixteen bodhisattvas, and others,

དགོན་མཚོ་ག་རིན་ཆེན་གསུམ་ལ་ཕྱག་འཚལ་བསྟོད།

KÖN CHOK RIN CHEN SUM LA CHAK TSHAL TÖ  
to the precious Three Jewels, I offer praise and prostrate.

ཚངས་དང་བརྒྱ་བྱིན་རྒྱལ་ཚེན་ཕྱོགས་སྟོང་བརྟུ།

TSHANG DANG GYA JIN GYEL CHEN CHOK KYONG CHU  
To Brahma, Indra, the Great Kings, the Protectors of the Ten Directions,

གོད་སྤྱིན་ལྗེ་དཔོན་བརྟུ་གཉིས་གཡོག་དང་བཅས།

NÖ JIN DE PÖN CHU NYI YOK DANG CHE  
the twelve yaksha chiefs and all their assistants,

ལྷ་མི་སྤྱན་གྱི་རིག་འཛིན་དང་སྤོང་ཚོགས།

LHA MIN MEN GYI RIK DZIN DRANG SONG TSHOK  
Vidyadharas and Rishis of medicine, divine and human

བདུད་ཅི་སྤྱན་གྱི་ལྷ་ལ་ཕྱག་འཚལ་བསྟོད།

DÜ TSI MEN GYI LHA LA CHAK TSAL TÖ  
to the deities of ambrosial medicine, I offer praise and prostrate.

བདག་མདུན་ཐུགས་ཀའི་རྩི་ལ་སྤྱགས་ཐེང་བསྟོར་བར་དམིགས་ལ།

DAK DÜN THUK KAY HUNG LA NGAK TRENG KOR WAR MIG LA  
The HUNG in the heart of the self and front visualizations is surrounded by the mantra garland.

*An Explanation*

འོད་ཟེར་ཁ་དོག་སྒྲ་ཚོགས་འཕྲོས་པས་ཤར་བྱོགས་བྱེད་པུ་སྒྲ་བའི་ཞིང་ཁམས་ནས་སྒྲན་ལྷ་མཚོད་པས་བྱགས་རྒྱུད་བསྐྱེད་ནས།

Through radiating many-colored light rays, offerings are made to Menla in the pure realm appearing in the East as the color of lapis lazuli.

དེ་ལས་སྒྲན་ལྷ་སྐྱེ་ཆེ་ཆུང་གསུང་སྐགས་འབྲེང་བྱགས་ལྷག་མཚོན་ཨ་རུ་ར་ལྷུང་བཟེད་བདུད་ཅི་བཀའ་བཆར་ལྟར་བབས་ནས་རང་  
དང་མདུན་སྐྱེད་ལ་ཐིམ་པར་གྱུར།

These lights invoke his mind stream, whence Menla's bodies, large and small, his speech as the mantra garland, and his mind as the hand symbols of the arura and the begging bowl filled with amrita, all falling like rain, dissolve into myself and the front visualization.

ཏདུ་ཐུ།                      ཨོྲཱི་ཤྲི་ཤྲི་ཧྲི་མ་རྩུ་ཤྲི་ཤྲི་ཧྲི་རྩུ་ཨ་མ་རྩུ་ཏེ་སྐྱུ་ཏུ།

TAYATA OM BEKENDZE BEKENDZE MAHA BEKENDZE RADZA  
SAMUDGATE SO HA

*Repeat as much as possible and then at the end:*

སྲིག་ལྷུང་ཀུན་བཤགས་དགོ་བ་བྱང་རྒྱུ་བ་བསྐྱེ།

DIK THUNG KÜN SHAK GE WA JANG CHUB NGO  
I confess all wrongs and downfalls and dedicate all virtue to awakening.

ནད་ཀའོན་སྐྱུག་བསྐྱེད་བྱུང་བའི་བཀྲ་ཤིས་ཤོག།

NE DON DUK NGEL DREL WAY TA SHI SHOK

May there be the auspiciousness of freedom from sickness, harmful spirits, and suffering.

གཤམ་ཤིག་ལ་གསོལ་ཞུ།

*The prayer to return back to the visualization:*

### *The Fulfillment Prayer*

འཇིག་རྟེན་པ་རྣམས་རང་གནས་བཞུ་སྟེ།

JIK TEN PA NAM RANG NE BENZA MU

The worldly ones return to their own places BENZA MU

ཡེ་ཤེས་དམ་ཚིག་ལྷ་རྣམས་བདག་ལ་ཐིམ།

YE SHE DAM TSHIK LHA NAM DAK LA THIM

The jnana and samaya sattvas dissolve into me,

ཀ་དག་ཀུན་བཟང་རྫོང་དུ་ཡི་མ་ཨོ།

KA DAK KÜN ZANG LONG DU E MA HO

and I dissolve into primordial purity, the expanse of Samantabhadra. E MA HO.

### End of Practice

ཞེས་པ་དགོངས་གཏོར་གྱི་བྱུང་རྒྱུ་ནུབ་ལྷན་ཚོས་ཉིད་ནས་བསྟུམ་ཏེ་རྩལ་གཞུང་གི་བསྐྱིགས་པ་ལ་འགལ་བ་མཚེས་ན་ལྷ་ལ་བཤགས་ཤིང་།

This was compiled from a mind treasure found within the Sky-Dharma and was arranged by Raga Asya. If there are contradictions, I confess them before the deity.

དགོངས་ལེམས་ཅན་མམས་ཅན་དང་ལས་ཐར་ནས་སྤྱོད་སྤྱོད་ལོ་འཕང་ཐོབ་པར་གྱུར་ཅིག། མདོ་ཚོགས་ལ་ལྷུས་གསོལ་སྣོད་ན་ཡོད་ཀྱང་།  
Through this virtue, may all sentient beings, once freed from sickness, swiftly attain the level of Menla. Though the sutra rituals have the practice of washing [which is absent here],

དེ་ལས་མཐོ་བའི་རྣམ་འབྱེད་རྒྱུད་ལ་མཇུག་ཏུ་ཡོད་པས་མི་འགལ་ལོ། དེ་ལ་ཚོགས་འདི་ལ་བྱགས་དམ་བྱས་ན་མཚོན་ཡོད་ནི། བཟོན་པ་ཡིན་ན་  
as this is a higher practice, found at the end of the [supreme] yoga tantra, there is no contradiction. If you take this as your regular practice, the benefits are the following. If you are ordained,

ཚུལ་ཁྲིམས་མི་ཉམས་ཤིང་། གཤམ་ཏེ་ཉམས་པ་ཞིག་ཡིན་ཀྱང་། དེའི་སྤྱི་བསལ་བྱུང་ནས་དཔེ་སྤྱོད་བཟང་དང་། དུས་ལ་བཟང་ཡི་དུགས་དང་།  
your discipline will be maintained; though there might be an occasion when it is not, having purified this obscuration, you will not fall into the lower realms. Having purified the negative karma of being born as a hell being, a hungry ghost,

དུད་འགོར་སྐྱེ་བའི་ལས་དན་མམས་ཅན་དག་ནས་དེར་མི་སྐྱེ། གཤམ་ཏེ་སྐྱེས་ཀྱང་དེ་མ་ཐག་ཏུ་ཐར་ནས་བདེ་འགོ་མཐོར་ལ་གྱུ་མཚོགས་ཏུ་སྐྱེ་ཞིང་རིམ་  
or an animal, you'll not take such a birth. Even if you do, immediately liberated, you'll take a felicitous rebirth in a higher realm, and gradually

གྱིས་མངས་རྒྱས་ཐོབ་པ་དང་། ཚོ་འདིར་ཡང་ཟས་གོས་ཚོགས་མེད་པར་འབྱོར་པ་དང་ལྡན་པ་དང་། བྱད་དང་དོན་དང་བྱུང་ཀྱང་རྒྱལ་པོའི་  
attain awakening. In this life as well, you'll easily obtain food and clothing and not be  
harmed by disease,

ཆད་པ་ལ་སོགས་པའི་གནོད་པས་མི་ཚུགས་པ་དང་། ལྷ་གན་དོན་ཅི་དང་ཚངས་པ་དང་བརྒྱ་བྱིན་དང་རྒྱལ་པོ་ཚེན་པོ་བཞི་དང་།  
negative spirits, sorcery, or the punishments of rulers. You'll be protected and guarded by  
Vajrapani, Brahma, the great kings of the four directions,

གོད་སྤྱིན་གྱི་སྡེ་དཔོན་ཚེན་པོ་བཅུ་གཉིས་གཡོག་བདུན་འབྲམ་དང་བཅས་པས་སྤང་ཞིང་རྫོབ་སྟེ། དུས་མ་ཡིན་པའི་འཆི་བ་བཅོ་བརྒྱད་དང་།  
and the twelve great Yaksha chiefs each with their 700,000 assistants. You'll be freed  
from all harm:

དགྲ་དང་གཙན་གཞན་ལ་སོགས་པའི་གནོད་པ་ཐམས་ཅད་ལས་ཐར་ཞིང་། བསམ་པ་ཐམས་ཅད་ཡོངས་སུ་ཚོགས་པར་བྱེད་པར་འགྱུར་བ་སོགས་མཁུ  
from the eighteen kinds of untimely death, the harm of enemies, carnivorous beasts, and  
so forth. All your wishes will be fully realised, and so forth.

རྒྱས་པ་རྒྱན་སྤྱི་མདོ་གཉིས་ནས་མན་ཡོན་བསམ་གྱིས་མི་ཁྲུབ་པར་གསུངས་ཤིང་། ཚོས་པ་ལ་ཆེར་ལ་རྫོན་མདོགས་ཤིང་མགྲོན་གཤམ་འབྲལ་བ་མཁུ  
In the two more extensive sutras of Menla, the benefits are said to be inconceivable. In  
the great monastic centers,

པའི་གྲུ་ས་ཚེན་པོ་བྱང་དམ་རིང་དཔལ་འཁོར་ཚོས་སྡེ་ལ་སོགས་མཚན་ཉིད་ཀྱི་གྲུ་ས་ཐམས་ཅད་ནས་གསོན་པོའི་སྤྱི་རིམ་དང་།  
such as Jang Damring Pelkhor Chöde, and their philosophical colleges, where the  
scholars find fault with most Dharma and are difficult to satisfy, only this Menla ritual  
for prolonging life and clearing away

གཤམ་པོའི་སྐྱེ་བ་ལྟེན་ལ་སྐྱེ་བ་སྐྱེ་བ་ལ་གཏོགས་གཞན་ཚོ་གམི་དང་ཞིང་། བོད་ཡུལ་དོན་རྗེ་གདན་ལྷན་པོའི་མདུན་དང་།

the obscurations of death has spread widely. The ritual to be performed before the Jowo in Lhasa, Tibet's Bodhgaya, and before the Great Awakened One at Samye

བསམ་ཡས་བྱང་རྒྱུ་ཚེན་པོའི་མ དུན་དུ་བཏབ་རྒྱུ་འོ་གཡང་སྐྱེ་བ་སྐྱེ་བ་ལོ་གཡིན་།

is this ritual of Menla. You should trust that within any of the new and the ancient transmissions, the sutras and the tantras, nothing is more beneficial than Menla.

དེ་ལྟར་བཀའ་གསུམ་རྙིང་མདོ་སྤྲུལ་གང་ལ་ཡང་སྐྱེ་བ་སྐྱེ་བ་ལོ་གཡིན་ཆེ་བ་མེད་པས་ཡིད་ཆེས་པར་གྱིས་།

དེ་ལ་རྒྱས་བསྟུས་མང་ཡང་འདི་ཚོག་ཉིད་ལ་དོན་འབྲས་པ་དང་། ལྷ་མའི་ལུགས་ཡིན་པས་གཙོ་སྤྲུལ་མི་དགོས་།

There are many extensive and concise versions; this one has few words and the full meaning. Since it belongs to anutara yoga, rituals of purification are not needed.

འདི་ཡིད་སྤྲུལ་ཡིན་པས་གཏོར་མ་ཚོད་མེད་ཀྱང་ཚོག་པ་ཀུན་གྱིས་ཉམས་སྲུང་ལོངས་ཤིག་། །ལཱྱི་ཇ་ཡོལ་།།

Since the offerings are mental, it is all right not to offer tormas. Everyone should practice this. SHUBHAM DZAYENTU.

*Translated under the guidance of Thrangu Rinpoche and Khenpo Karthar Rinpoche by Michele Martin with assistance from Ngodrup Burkhar and reference to translations by Lama Yeshe Gyamtso and Sarah Harding, Woodstock, N.Y., 1984, 1999, Kathmandu, 1999.*

In the Appendix can be found a four-line version of this sadhana. The additional line contains a word-by-word translation of the Tibetan immediately above it.



## SHORT MEDICINE BUDDHA PRACTICE

HUNG KUN DOK BEN DUR YA YI RI WO DRA  
HUNG. Your body the color of a mountain of lapis lazuli,

DRO WA SEM CHEN NAY CHI DU NGAL SEL  
You dispel suffering of disease from all sentient beings.

CHANG CHUB SEM PA JAY CHI KOR JI KOR  
Your retinue of eight bodhisattvas surrounds you—

RIN CHEN MEN DZIN LHA LA CHA TSAL TÖ  
I praise and pay homage to the Deity Who Holds the Precious Medicine.

TAYATA OM BEKENDZE BEKENDZE MAHA BEKENDZE RADZA  
SAMUDGATE SO HA

SEM CHEN NAY PA JI NYAY PA  
May the many sentient beings who are sick

NYUR TU NAY LAY TAR JUR CHIK  
Quickly be freed from sickness

DRO WAY NAY NI MA LÜ PA  
And may all the sicknesses of beings

TAK TU JUNG WA MAY PAR SHOK  
Never arise again.

## VERY SHORT MEDICINE BUDDHA PRACTICE

༄། །བཅོམ་སྐྱོན་འདས་དེ་བཞིན་གཤམ་པ་དག་པ་བཅོམ་པ་ཡང་དག་པར་རྫོགས་པའི་

CHOM DEN DAY DE SHIN SHEK PA DRA CHOM PA YANG DAK PAR  
DZOK PAY

To you, Bhagavan, Tathagata, Arhat, perfect and fully

སངས་རྒྱས་སྐྱོན་གྱི་སྒྲ་བྱེད་ཀྱི་འོད་གྱི་རྒྱལ་པོ་ལ་སྤྱག་འཚེལ་ལོ། །

SANG GYE MEN GYI LA BE DUR YA O KYI GYEL PO LA CHAK TSEL  
LO

awakened Menla, king of lapis lazuli light, I offer prostrations.



PART THREE

---

THE MEDICINE BUDDHA SUTRA



## 1 TWELVE EXTRAORDINARY ASPIRATIONS FOR THE BENEFIT OF SENTIENT BEINGS

---



**W**E HAVE FINISHED GOING THROUGH the practice of the Medicine Buddha—how to do it, what to meditate on, and what its meaning is. If you can do this full form of the practice regularly, that will be extremely beneficial, because it bears great blessing. But even if you can do it only occasionally, there will still be great benefit from your involvement in it. There is also a shorter form of the practice that you can use when you do not have time to do the long form. It is found on the last page in your chant book.<sup>35</sup> It is a short supplication of the Medicine Buddha by name, which serves as a vehicle for cultivating faith in and devotion to the Medicine Buddha. As is taught in the sutra of Amitabha and in the sutra of the Medicine Buddha, recollecting and reciting the name of the Medicine Buddha is of incalculable benefit. Most of the benefits associated with the Medicine Buddha are connected with the twelve aspirations he made at the time of his initial generation of bodhicitta,<sup>36</sup> and most of these aspirations are connected in one way or another with his name. Therefore, most of the benefits connected with the Medicine Buddha can be gained by recollecting and reciting his name.

There are three sutras primarily concerned with the Medicine Buddha. One sets forth the twelve aspirations of the Medicine Buddha. Another sets forth the aspirations of the seven other medicine buddhas. The third, an extremely short sutra, sets forth the darani or mantras of the various medicine buddhas. I am now going to explain the main one, the sutra that sets forth the twelve aspirations of the Medicine Buddha. Before I begin, you should know something about the difference between sutras and shastras. Sutras are the Buddha's teachings, and shastras are commentaries on them. Shastras are constructed in order to give a summary of the meaning; therefore, they get right to the point—whereas sutras always begin with an in-

roduction that gives the setting for any particular teaching of the Buddha. A sutra will tell you where the Buddha was living when he gave that particular teaching, why he happened to give it, who asked him to give it, who and how many were there when he gave it, and exactly what he said and what others said that caused him to say what he said. The Buddha went just about everywhere in India. The setting for this particular sutra was Vaisali, one of the six major cities in India at that time. The retinue in the midst of which the Buddha taught this sutra was extremely large. It consisted of a great many monks and nuns and a great many bodhisattvas, both male and female; it consisted of monarchs, the ministers of these monarchs, and the common people from the kingdoms of these monarchs. There were also innumerable spirits and local divinities in attendance, all of whom had assembled in order to hear this teaching.

The foremost disciple in this gathering—in fact, the person who specifically asked the Buddha to give this explanation, which later came to be known as the Sutra of the Medicine Buddha—was the bodhisattva Manjushri. The sutra begins with Manjushri taking a certain physical posture and making the request. The posture that Manjushri takes is the same physical posture we take when we formally take the vow of refuge, when we take other forms of pratimoksha ordination, and when we take the bodhisattva vow. Manjushri's left knee is raised, his right knee is on the ground,<sup>37</sup> and his palms are joined in a gesture of devotion in front of his heart. Manjushri takes this posture because it is the posture that the Buddha's disciples always took whenever they addressed him. And the reason we take this posture in formal ceremonies today is that they did it then. We do it in order to recollect the Buddha when we take refuge or any other ordination.

Facing the Buddha and taking that posture, Manjushri addresses the Buddha, asking him to teach about those buddhas who had made extraordinary aspirations for the benefit of beings—what their aspirations were, and what the benefits of recollecting their names would be. He asks him to explain these things for the benefit of beings in the future.

The Buddha's first response to Manjushri's request is to praise him for making the request in the first place. Addressing Manjushri, the Buddha says, "It is excellent and fitting that you have made this request, because your motivation in doing so is compassion and a wish to bring about the means of purification of obscurations in general, and especially the means of eradicating the sickness of beings in the future."

While praising Manjushri for making this request, the Buddha enjoins him to listen well to the detailed explanation he was about to give. Commentators have explained that this injunction has three specific meanings. The Buddha says, “Manjushri, for that reason, listen well, listen fully, and hold this in your mind.” Each of these three points—listen well, listen fully, and hold this in your mind—has a particular meaning with respect to how to listen to the teachings. The first injunction—“Listen well”—means, listen with an appropriate motivation. If you have a good motivation for listening, then the dharma you hear will be contained in a pure form in your mind. On the other hand, if you listen with an impure motivation—with attachment or aversion or the like—then your mind will become like a container or cup that holds poison, which then turns whatever is poured into it into poison.

The second injunction of the Buddha—“Listen fully”—means, listen attentively. You may have a good motivation for listening to the teachings, but if you are distracted—if you do not direct your mind to what is being said—then listening is of no use. Your mind will become like a cup that is turned upside-down; nothing can be poured into it.

The Buddha’s third injunction is, “Hold it in your mind.” Even if you have a good motivation and listen well, if you forget what is being taught, then it is lost from your mind. Your mind is then like a broken cup, which, no matter how much is poured into it, will allow it all to leak back out again.

Then the Buddha tells Manjushri that in the eastern direction, innumerable realms away—which means that if you pass beyond this particular realm, the realm of the Buddha Shakyamuni, and go in the eastern direction past a truly large number of other realms—you will reach the buddha realm called the Light of Vaidhurya or the Light of Lapis Lazuli. In that realm there abides the Buddha Bhaishajyai Guru, the Medicine Buddha, also known as the Light of Lapis Lazuli or the Light of Vaidhurya, who teaches the dharma there. The Buddha tells Manjushri that because of the twelve extraordinary aspirations made by the Buddha Bhaishajyai Guru before he attained enlightenment, while he was still engaged in the practice or conduct of a bodhisattva, there is tremendous benefit in recollecting his name and tremendous blessing in supplicating him. In fact, the benefits that accrue from devotion to the Medicine Buddha are based primarily upon the aspirations he made while still a bodhisattva.<sup>38</sup>



The first of the twelve aspirations made by the Medicine Buddha while still a bodhisattva is, “In the future, when I attain perfect awakening and become a buddha, may my utterly luminous body illuminate innumerable worlds, and may all the beings who see it come to possess a body just like that, adorned with the thirty-two marks and the eighty signs of the body of a buddha.” The essential aspiration here is to have, upon awakening, the extraordinarily luminous form of a buddha, and on the basis of that, to bring about the liberation into buddhahood of any being who sees him. This does not mean that, immediately upon seeing the Medicine Buddha’s form, you become a buddha just like the Medicine Buddha. It means that seeing the Medicine Buddha, even seeing a painted depiction of the Medicine Buddha, or even just hearing about the thirty-two marks and eighty signs and so forth of the Medicine Buddha, instills a habit within your mind. How much of a habit is instilled depends upon your attitude towards what you see or encounter. If you have great faith in and devotion to the Medicine Buddha, then a very strong habit is instilled. If you have some degree of devotion, then some degree of habit is instilled. If you have a little devotion a little habit is instilled. And if you have only the slightest amount of devotion only the slightest amount of habit is instilled. Regardless of how much or how little, eventually this habit will lead to your attainment of that same form as the Medicine Buddha, as well as to the perfect accomplishment of what he has aspired to.<sup>39</sup> If you have great faith in the Medicine Buddha, this will happen much more quickly, and if you have no faith whatsoever, it will happen very slowly. But it will definitely still happen. It is because of this first aspiration of the Medicine Buddha that there is so much benefit in seeing any depiction of him, whether you see it all the time, or whether you see it occasionally—it will do you great benefit.

The second aspiration of the Medicine Buddha, made as a bodhisattva, is also connected primarily with his appearance. It is as follows: “In the future, when I attain perfect awakening and become a buddha, may my body be as brilliant and lustrous as the jewel of vaidhurya or lapis lazuli. May it be stainless and luminous, vast, pleasing, glorious, majestic in every way. And may all who see it be benefited by it.” The apparent and obvious result of this aspiration is the form that the Medicine Buddha exhibits in his pure realm, which form literally has the qualities of being luminous and lustrous and majestic, and so on. But as an additional consequence of this aspiration the Medicine Buddha exhibits his form indirectly even in the

midst of impure realms, such as our own, so that beings who are ignorant of what is to be accepted and what is to be rejected, of what is to be done and what is not to be done, can still be inspired by seeing an image of the Medicine Buddha or by hearing his name. As a consequence, although they may not be directly interested in hearing about what is to be done and what is not to be done, a devotion to correct action will gradually grow in their minds through having seen these things or having heard these things.

The third aspiration of the Medicine Buddha as a bodhisattva was that upon his awakening (upon becoming a buddha) through *prajna* and *upaya* (knowledge and method) he be able to bring about prosperity for all beings. This aspiration is particularly concerned with alleviating a type of suffering that is very common in the human realm, which manifests in its most extreme form as poverty. But even when we human beings are not poor, we still think that we are poor. We have not only the suffering of poverty, but the suffering of unceasing ambition—and also the suffering of constant struggle to secure ourselves, and to secure greater and greater prosperity. The first two aspirations were connected with bringing beings to ultimate liberation. This aspiration is more connected with benefiting beings, and especially human beings, in the short term. It is very important because we may tend to think sometimes that the concerns and aspirations of buddhas only do us good in the long run—that they are only concerned with our liberation and do us no immediate good in this life. This aspiration indicates that this is not true. This aspiration is designed to bring about immediate help. This means that, if you supplicate the Medicine Buddha, it can affect your prosperity in this life. This will not work as immediately as taking a pill, but it can actually make a difference.

The fourth aspiration of the Medicine Buddha is that he be able to extricate beings who have taken incorrect paths and place them on paths that lead to liberation. All of us want to be happy, and we select various ways to lead our lives that we think will make our lives happy. For each of us that is our path. Unfortunately, while some of us actually select ways to make ourselves happy, many of us—thinking to make ourselves happy—select ways that are in fact merely causes of more and more suffering. The primary focus of this aspiration is to be able to lead beings away from those counterproductive paths or lifestyles and into paths that lead to liberation. This is done through exhibiting the forms of buddhas, through the presence of their speech in the form of sutras and so on, through the demon-

strations of the activities of buddhas, and so on. These things have occurred in our lives already. In one way or another, we have come into contact with some form of depiction of the form of the Buddha, we have heard the sutras or the teachings of the Buddha, or we have been inspired by places connected with the Buddha's life. In short, in whatever way, this activity of the buddhas has already caused us to change our course of action.

The second part of this fourth aspiration is the wish also to establish those beings concerned only with their own liberation\* on a path that leads to the full liberation of all beings—in short, on the mahayana path. This refers in part to something that is stated very clearly in texts such as *The Jewel Ornament of Liberation*, which states that, after someone attains the state of an arhat or arhati—either as a shravaka or as a pratyekabuddha—and has achieved full liberation for themselves from samsara, eventually—sometimes after a very long time—a buddha will reveal his or her form to the arhat or arhati, inspiring that being to enter the path of mahayana and attain full buddhahood. The second part of this fourth aspiration is an aspiration to do just that—to exhibit his form in order to cause beings who are immersed in paths leading to personal liberation alone to engage in paths that will lead to the liberation of all beings, and by doing so, to inspire those beings to increase their love, compassion, and bodhicitta.

The fifth aspiration of the Medicine Buddha is that subsequent to his awakening or buddhahood he be able to inspire morality in all beings. In the words of the sutra, what he suggests is the moral discipline of a monk or a nun. But by extension, this refers to the practice of morality in general, which is to say, conducting yourself physically, verbally, and mentally in a way that is beneficial to and not harmful to others. The idea here is that the inspiration of a buddha inspires one to behave morally. Seeing the image of a buddha or hearing the teachings of a buddha has caused us to enter the door of the dharma to begin with, and to change our physical, verbal, and mental conduct somewhat. Whether upon beginning the practice of dharma you practice with extraordinary diligence, which is wonderful, or not, which is still okay, there will still be some kind of improvement in your conduct. The primary aspiration here of the Medicine Buddha is that, through his blessing, practitioners be able to maintain morality without impairment. The secondary aspiration is that—since ordinary beings will turn away from moral conduct from time to time, and thereby become confused—the Medicine Buddha be able to prevent those who turn away from morality

from remaining in a state of inappropriate conduct, so that they will return to moral conduct and avoid lower rebirths.

Part of the fifth aspiration is that for beings who have mistaken the path, who have turned away from moral conduct, the positive habits that they created in the past when they first adopted moral conduct again become foremost in their minds, through the blessings of the buddhas, thereby causing them to return to moral conduct.

The sixth aspiration concerns those who are born with congenital physical problems. It is an aspiration by the Medicine Buddha to be able by his blessing to heal anyone who is born with any congenital physical problem or defect, such as impaired senses, impaired limbs, or virulent disease. From the point of view of ordinary thinking, you might think it impossible that the condition of someone born with a congenital physical problem could be alleviated. Yet it is quite possible that such a person could benefit through intense supplication of the Medicine Buddha. And in the cases in which they are unable to ameliorate their condition immediately, the supplication and recollection of the name of the Medicine Buddha and the practice of the sadhana would still generate great lasting benefit.

The seventh aspiration of the Medicine Buddha is that merely hearing his name would alleviate the sufferings of sickness and poverty that afflict those who find themselves seriously ill with no help, no friends, and no resources; that merely by hearing or recollecting his name or by seeing an image of him, beings in that type of situation would be freed from both the sicknesses they suffer and the poverty that reinforces the sicknesses; and that furthermore, those beings, once having heard the Medicine Buddha's name, would never again become ill throughout all of their lifetimes until their attainment of buddhahood. This sounds like an extremely vast and profound, even an extreme, aspiration. But it is by no means impossible that it could be fulfilled, especially for someone who has intense devotion to the Medicine Buddha, recollects his name, supplicates him, and so on. This aspiration is an instance of one of the particular benefits of the recollection of the Medicine Buddha's name.

Often we find ourselves witnessing the death of a small animal, an insect, a bird, or some other creature that is about to breathe its last breath. It is gasping away its last few moments of life. Because we have buddha nature and because these beings also have buddha nature, of course we feel empathy and compassion for them. But the compassion sometimes seems

futile, because we simply do not know what to do. Because of the blessings of buddhas and bodhisattvas, however, there are things that we can do. One, for example, is to recite the name of the Medicine Buddha in the hearing of that dying animal. This is probably not going to heal its sickness immediately. Dying birds will not likely suddenly wake up and fly off. But what it will do is ultimately in the long term better than that; it will establish the basis for that being's future liberation.

The eighth aspiration of the Medicine Buddha concerns freeing human beings in particular from situations of discrimination. It refers to situations like the caste system that was in place in India in the Buddha's time. It often happens in human society that a certain class or group of people will be isolated from the rest and considered to be so far inferior that even their humanity is disputed, as has happened at times to the class known as the "untouchables" in India. The idea here is that, if one of these beings sees an image of the Medicine Buddha or hears the name of the Medicine Buddha, they will generate enough confidence in their humanity, enough recognition of and confidence in the fact that they are just as much a fully fledged human being as whoever is discriminating against them, that they will be able to escape that situation. And it has happened many times that people born in the lowest caste in societies like India could escape their caste restrictions in various ways, which could be viewed as an instance of the blessings of buddhas.

## 2 THE BUDDHA SHAKYAMUNI TAUGHT THIS SUTRA TO INSPIRE US TO PRACTICE

---



SO FAR WE HAVE DISCUSSED the first eight of the twelve aspirations of the Medicine Buddha presented in the *Medicine Buddha Sutra*. All of these vast aspirations are born of the Medicine Buddha's particular generation of bodhicitta at the beginning of his path. They are explained in the sutra so that we may understand how the blessings of the body, speech, and mind of the Medicine Buddha can enter into us and what the benefits of their doing so will be. The Buddha Shakyamuni taught this sutra in order to inspire us to practice. The idea being conveyed here is that meditation on the Medicine Buddha, supplication of the Medicine Buddha, and recollection of the name of the Medicine Buddha bring extraordinary benefits. By understanding that, you will feel enthusiastic about the Medicine Buddha practice. This enthusiasm will cause you to practice, which in turn will cause you to attain the result of practice. So now we will go on from where we left off, beginning with the ninth aspiration.

The ninth aspiration of the Medicine Buddha is to free all beings from the noose or lasso of mara. The lasso of mara refers to that which obstructs liberation. In this case it means any cultivated view that is sufficiently incorrect that it leads you down the wrong path, any view that is actually leading you away from liberation rather than towards it. Now any kind of view—which is to say, any kind of consciously cultivated or developed understanding of how things are—is produced through one's own investigation and analysis of phenomena, using one's own intellect or intelligence. This analysis can either be correct, thereby producing a correct view, or it can be incorrect or faulty, thereby producing an incorrect view. Given our native intelligence, we all have the capacity to engage in these kinds of analyses, and therefore we are capable of coming to either correct or incorrect conclusions. If the view you take of things is basically correct, then it will be a strong cause of your liberation. And by causing your liberation it

will be an indirect cause of the liberation of others. In short, a correct view of how things are produces all manner of happiness. On the other hand, if your view is sufficiently incorrect and actually becomes a perverted or misguided use of your intelligence, then it will obstruct your path to liberation, thereby preventing you from liberating others and becoming an obstacle to happiness.

There are two types of misguided or malfunctioning intelligence. One is a strongly incorrect understanding of how things are, which actually leads you on the wrong path, and the other is an analysis that causes you to doubt what is actually true, and therefore causes you to be unable to accept the truth. In either case, the aspiration of the Medicine Buddha here is to free beings from those kinds of misconceptions or misunderstandings, and to establish them on the correct path to liberation.

The other part of this ninth aspiration is connected with the conduct of beings. If your view is correct, then that will cause you to engage in appropriate conduct, which is the conduct of a bodhisattva. And if your view is incorrect, your conduct will follow suit; it will also be incorrect. What is understood here by correct conduct is conduct that does not harm others or yourself, but benefits others and yourself. This conduct naturally ensues from having a correct understanding, a correct view, of how things are. The aspiration of the Medicine Buddha here while still a bodhisattva is that the blessing and the activity of his teaching that will ensue upon his attaining buddhahood will lead beings to a correct understanding and, therefore, to correct conduct that will cause them to attain liberation.

The tenth aspiration of the Medicine Buddha is to free beings from persecution by their rulers. As literally stated, this means, through the Medicine Buddha's blessing, to free and protect beings from imprisonment, execution, and all the other hardships and cruelties that absolute monarchs impose upon their subjects. But by extension, this also refers to all analogous situations in which something in the external world interferes with your well being—to sickness, to any kind of abuse or persecution by others—regardless of who they may be—and to all the other sorts of dangers and disasters that constantly threaten us. Because the nature of our existence in the world is impermanence, we are constantly in some kind of danger and live in some kind of fear of one thing or another happening to us. The point of this aspiration is that through the blessing of the Medicine Buddha beings be protected from these dangers, and from the fear of the arising of these dangers.

A very commonly displayed image of samsara called the Wheel of Existence shows at the center the three poisons<sup>40</sup> and outside of that the six realms.<sup>41</sup> Outside the six realms, it shows that this [entire wheel of transmigratory existence], which represents samsara, is being held between the teeth and the lap by a very wrathful figure. This wrathful figure represents the basic danger and fear that characterizes samsaric existence. As is shown in the painting, sometimes one is happy, and sometimes one is miserable. But in either case, the basic nature of one's existence is change. Because it is change, it is uncertainty, and because it is uncertainty, it is danger. And because it is danger, it is fear. And all of this uncertainty, danger, and fear is represented by this wrathful figure. During the Buddha's lifetime, his senior students and the shravakas were frequently asked by many different people what his teachings were all about. They would be asked many different questions. And when they went to the Buddha and explained that they were not always able to answer all of these questions, he came up with the idea of painting this Wheel of Existence on the door of every Buddhist temple to serve as a representation, in one image, of the buddhadharma.

The purpose of buddhadharma, of course, is to free one from fear and danger. It is to that end that the Buddha taught the dharma, including this sutra of the Medicine Buddha. We all have fears and anxieties. And these fears and anxieties really stem from the fact that samsaric or cyclic existence is fundamentally full of impermanence, and therefore full of suffering. If you ask, is there no way to transcend these fears and anxieties, the answer is, "Yes, there is a way. If you practice dharma, and if, by so doing, you connect with the blessings, the compassion, and the aspirations of buddhas such as the Medicine Buddha, fear and anxiety can be transcended," which is to say that, if you practice with great diligence, you can transcend all fear once and for all. But even if you do not practice with that much diligence, even if you only practice a little bit, or even if you merely have some contact with the dharma, there will be some benefit. It will help to some extent. And ultimately, you will be liberated into a state beyond all fear. So, in this tenth aspiration, the expressly stated aspiration to free beings from the persecution of unjust monarchs really refers to freeing beings from the sufferings of samsara altogether, which means freeing them from the grip of impermanence. And the point of this is that it is possible to transcend the fear and danger which impermanence otherwise imposes upon us.

The eleventh and twelfth aspirations have in common that they are



connected with freeing beings from the suffering of poverty. Specifically the eleventh aspiration is to free beings from the suffering of lacking the necessities of life—from the sufferings of hunger and thirst, and the related suffering of constantly having to struggle to survive. This aspiration of the Medicine Buddha is to free beings from lack of food and drink and from the need to struggle to acquire them, and by extension, to extend to all beings the experience of what is referred to by the Buddha as the delightful taste of dharma. This means that the Medicine Buddha aspired not only to give beings the physical means of survival, physical nutrition, but also the spiritual nutrition of the dharma.

The delightful taste of dharma means hearing the dharma and tasting it in that way, and then practicing it and, through practicing it, becoming truly happy. When one has practiced dharma to the point where one has attained a true and stable state of happiness, one no longer needs to experience the sufferings of samsara, which means that there will no longer be physical suffering, nor will there be mental misery. The benefit of dharma, and the way in which one tastes its delightful taste, can occur to various degrees and in various ways. Sometimes one is benefited simply by hearing the dharma. Sometimes one is benefited by reflecting upon its meaning; sometimes, by meditating upon it. And in some cases the degree of benefit is limited to having a slight contact with it. But in any case, all of these are ways in which, through the aspiration of buddhas, dharma benefits beings and frees them from suffering.

The twelfth aspiration of the Medicine Buddha focuses on actual poverty and specifically on the lack of things that give us comfort. First the Medicine Buddha aspires to be able to provide clothing for all those beings who lack sufficient clothing and are therefore subject to suffering from heat or cold, the elements, and so on. Beyond that, he aspires to provide ornamentation, which means things like jewelry and so forth, for those who lack them. In the same vein, he aspires to provide musical instruments and the sound and presence of music in one's life for those who lack them. This aspiration centers around fulfilling the wishes of beings and giving beings what they want and what will make them happy in the short run. From one point of view, you might think that this means that simply by praying to the Medicine Buddha you can produce a shower of designer clothing from the sky or whatever musical instruments you might happen to want. So you might actually try praying with those expectations, and you might be

very disappointed when they are not fulfilled. This does not mean, however, that the Medicine Buddha's aspiration was pointless or ineffective. The way this aspiration takes effect, and indeed the way they all take effect, is that through the aspiration and power of the Medicine Buddha beings come into contact with dharma. Beings meet images, representations, or other expressions of the activity of the Medicine Buddha or of other buddhas. As a result, they abandon the wrongdoing and wrong thinking that reinforce their obscurations, gradually weakening or getting rid of their obscurations altogether, and gradually gathering the accumulations of merit and wisdom through actions performed under the inspiration of the dharma and the inspiration of buddhas. This changes their situation. Either in that life, or in a future life, they start to acquire the things that they want and have lacked to that point. So it is not the case that this twelfth aspiration does not work simply because clothes do not rain down upon you immediately. It works, but it works in a less direct and more gradual way.

So in the *Sutra of the Medicine Buddha*, the Buddha Shakyamuni set forth these twelve aspirations that were made by the Medicine Buddha upon his initial generation of bodhicitta. Then, continuing to address Manjushri, who had requested this explanation, the Buddha points out that as a result of the Medicine Buddha's aspirations, his qualities—both the qualities of his form and being, and the qualities of his realm, which have arisen from his aspirations—are unlimited. The Buddha Shakyamuni also mentions that in his realm the Medicine Buddha has two main disciples in his retinue, bodhisattvas referred to by the names Luminous Like The Sun and Luminous Like The Moon. And then, continuing to address Manjushri, the Buddha says that a man or woman who possesses faith, and therefore diligence and insight, should supplicate the Medicine Buddha, should meditate upon the Medicine Buddha, and should recollect the name of the Medicine Buddha.

Next the Buddha talks about further benefits of supplicating the Medicine Buddha. The Buddha mentions that there are people so avaricious they cannot stand to give anything away. He points out that when people cannot stand to give anything away, it is fundamentally because they do not realize there are benefits in doing so. This lack of realization is what keeps them so obsessed with holding onto their possessions. Such people never think of generosity. If they are forced by circumstances to give something away, it makes them extremely unhappy, even if they have to give it

away to members of their own family. The problem with this is that if you have that degree of avariciousness, you are likely to have a somewhat unpleasant rebirth. The Buddha says at this point that if even such an extremely avaricious person hears the name of the Medicine Buddha and makes some kind of connection with him—which basically means knowing something about the Medicine Buddha's qualities—then this will inspire in them an understanding of the value of generosity. And as they come to understand the value of generosity, they will actually become generous. Becoming generous, they will not have an unpleasant rebirth. And throughout all their future lives, this momentum of generosity will be present, so that not only will they always be generous, but they will actually become a source of encouragement to others to be generous as well.

That is the first benefit explained at this point in the sutra of recollecting the name of and supplicating the Medicine Buddha. As for the second benefit, the Buddha again addresses Manjushri saying that, similarly, there are some people who simply cannot behave themselves. They have no interest whatsoever in morality. They think morality is pointless. The reason that they have no interest in morality is that they do not understand its value. They do not understand the benefit of behaving morally, and they do not understand the problems that behaving immorally leads to. At the same time they have no interest in dharma or spirituality of any kind, because they do not understand its value. Not knowing its value, of course, they have no interest in it. But when a person in even such an extreme state of mind as that hears the name of the Medicine Buddha, they will come to have respect for and gradual interest in both morality and the practice of dharma. As a result they will behave appropriately and they will study and practice dharma, which will cause them not only to be happy in this life, but to come to have better and better and happier and happier lives, life after life. The momentum of their conduct and of their study and practice will be maintained, and will increase as time goes on. We see this development in our own experience. Many of us start out knowing nothing about dharma and therefore not having much respect for or faith in it, simply because we do not know what it is. And we may have had so many questions and doubts about the notions of morality that we had heard about that we really did not respect that either. But at some point something inspired us. We saw something, such as an image of the Buddha, or we heard something, such as an explanation of dharma or the name of a buddha.

Something caught our attention, and caused us to entertain the idea of dharma practice, which caused us to change our way of life to some extent and to practice dharma. Whether you are new to the practice of dharma or are completely immersed in it, in either case something has happened. This something happening is exactly what is referred to in this benefit of the hearing of the Medicine Buddha's name. As it says in the sutras, a being such as ourselves comes in contact with some form of the activity and blessing of a buddha—an image of a buddha, the name of a buddha, or teachings that come from a buddha—and being inspired by that, eventually we develop some degree of faith and compassion for other beings [which leads to the development of other good qualities].

Of course, our faith in dharma and our devotion to dharma are not unfluctuating. There are times when we apparently have strong faith and devotion, and other times when doubts arise that seem to obstruct or impede our faith and devotion. In either situation, what is necessary is the same: to supplicate or pray with all available faith and devotion, based on a fundamental confidence in the buddhas and in their teachings. If you supplicate in that way, when you have faith, your faith will increase. And if you supplicate in that way when you have doubts, your faith will increase and your doubts will lessen. So whether or not you are afflicted by hesitation or doubt about dharma, you have to do the same thing. As the Buddha points out at this point in the sutra, supplication of buddhas, with all the faith and devotion one can muster, is always important.

The Buddha Shakyamuni states four benefits of recollecting or hearing the name of the Medicine Buddha, the first two of which we have now discussed: the alleviation of avarice and the alleviation of immorality. I would like to stop here for this morning, because there were a number of people who were lined up yesterday to ask questions<sup>42</sup> and did not get a chance to do so. If you would still like to ask your questions now, then please go ahead.

**Question:** Could you explain the visualization for the short or condensed practice of the Medicine Buddha?

**Rinpoche:** There are two ways you can do this. One way is to make the supplication, paying homage the Medicine Buddha and thinking that he is actually present in front of you and to visualize him by recollecting his appearance, his color, what he is holding, what he is wearing, and so on.

Another equally valid way is to think that you are paying homage to him wherever he is, in which case you do not specifically have to visualize him at all.

**Question:** Rinpoche, I have a problem that keeps recurring in my visualization. The deity—Dorje Chang or the Medicine Buddha—is in front and I can see one side of it very clearly in detail and color, and the other side is practically in the dark. It is muddy, in the shade; the color is very indistinct, and when I get tired I can hardly see anything at all on that side.

**Rinpoche:** Is it always the same side?

**Question:** It is pretty much the same side. It is my left side, the deity's right side, that is clear; the other side is not. Also, if I'm sitting, facing straight ahead, and visualizing the deity right in front of me, and if my eyes are partially closed, it feels like the deity is off at an angle. I keep shifting my body to get it in, but it is already straight, but it feels like I'm sitting diagonally and looking over there.

**Rinpoche:** This is happening spontaneously to you; it is not something you are causing, so if you just leave it alone, if you just continue with the practice, it will take care of itself.

**Question:** Rinpoche, three questions. In the descent of the body, speech, and mind blessings, do they enter respectively into the three centers specifically, or do they enter generally into the body? Secondly, could you give us a little more detail about the sequence of the practice in terms of the small Medicine Buddha in a certain part of your body, or in others' bodies? And can that be done outside the formal practice? And lastly, is there a connection between the Medicine Buddha and Jambhala? If there is, what is the connection? And if there is a difference, what is the difference? Is there a benefit to relating more to one or to the other?

**Rinpoche:** As to your first question, in the case of sadhana practice and the recitation of mantra, when you have the blessings of the three gates of the deity dissolving into yourself, you can think that they dissolve generally into your whole body, throughout your whole body without specifying that they dissolve into your head and so on. In the case of an abhisheka [empowerment], then they would dissolve into the specific parts of your body. As to your second question, you can do the application practice of visualizing a small Medicine Buddha in a specific part of your body or

someone else's body, either during the formal practice of the sadhana, while reciting the mantra, or in post-meditation at anytime you want. As to the third question, there is a connection between the Medicine Buddha and Jambhala. The connection is basically that the twelve yaksha chieftains, who are guardians of the *Sutra of the Medicine Buddha* and his teaching, are of the same class or clan as the Jambhalas. Therefore, in a sense Jambhala is also a guardian of the Medicine Buddha's teaching. I had an indication of this when I was practicing the Medicine Buddha sadhana extensively at a Taiwanese monastery called Shi Lung Si. Monastics at the monastery and the other participants were also engaged in practicing the Medicine Buddha intensively. One of the reasons they were doing so, they said, was that whenever they engage in the Medicine Buddha practice communally, things go well at the monastery, which they felt had something to do with the activity of Jambhala coming along automatically with the supplication and practice of the Medicine Buddha. Therefore, I would say that if you have to choose just one of them to supplicate, the choice should be the Medicine Buddha, since it seems that if you supplicate the Medicine Buddha you get Jambhala's assistance automatically.

**Question:** Rinpoche, this practice seems so wonderful and complete that I'm having a hard time understanding why we haven't heard much about it until recently. I realize I haven't been practicing that long, but I'm wondering what the place of Medicine Buddha practice is. Is it something that was done a lot in monasteries? Why has it been so long in coming?

**Rinpoche:** As for the place that the Medicine Buddha practice is given in the monastic tradition in Tibet, it varies quite a bit. In some monasteries a great deal of it is done, and in other monasteries very little of it is done. And just about everything in between. There is no hard and fast rule. As for why you have not heard much about it until now, do not forget that vajrayana is very new in the West. Basically we could say that vajrayana has only been present in this country for thirty years. We have to look at how the Buddha taught. When the Buddha taught dharma, he started with what we call the common vehicle. And then he gradually, gradually deepened his presentation as people became prepared for it by their practice. In the same way, teachers have had to introduce and teach the dharma gradually in this country, simply because, as your practice progresses, your confidence and faith and understanding increase accordingly. For example, most of the teachers

who began teaching in the West started by teaching shamatha practice, which was something that did not involve a great deal of faith, because you were working directly with what you could immediately experience in your own mind. The validity of it was obvious from the start. If they had begun by saying this is the fundamental practice of our tradition, you are to visualize the Medicine Buddha and believe me he exists, he has tremendous blessing, and if you pray to him, his blessing will enter you, you probably would not have believed it.

**Question:** Is this practice directly connected to Tibetan medical practice?

**Rinpoche:** Yes, it is connected. Medicine Buddha practices are used to consecrate the medicines while they are being prepared. Also the lineage of the medicine comes from a rishi called Rigpe Yeshe—“awareness wisdom”—who was an emanation of the Medicine Buddha. And when we look at the history of Tibetan medicine, we see that the foremost physicians of Tibet, including the great siddha Yönten Gonpo and others, subsequent to having visions of the Medicine Buddha or receiving his blessing, were able to discover new modes of diagnosis, new preparations of medicine, and would compose medicinal textbooks.

**Question:** Thank you, Rinpoche, for your transmission and your teaching. I have been taught up to this point that there are basically three ways to assist beings across the ocean of samsara to the shore of enlightenment: like a king, who would lead everyone to liberation; like a ferryman, who would put everyone in the same boat with him and cross over together with everyone, so to speak. Or like a shepherd, who would make sure everyone is there safely before he goes himself. I have confusion about being a shepherd on the one hand and healing and enlightening myself first before allowing everyone else to go in before me. Could you speak to that please?

**Rinpoche:** There are, as you indicated in your question, three ways that bodhicitta can be generated, according to the sutra tradition. These three different generations of bodhicitta, all of which are acceptable, correspond to how selfish you are. When someone is utterly unselfish, completely and absolutely altruistic, then when they generate bodhicitta, the attitude they will have is, “I will not attain buddhahood, I refuse to attain buddhahood, until each and every other being already has attained it.” This is what is called shepherd-like bodhicitta, as you mentioned in your

question. And that is considered the best style of bodhicitta generation from the point of view of the sutras; the best, because it is completely unselfish. The second best is the thought, “Well, I want to attain buddhahood, they all want to attain buddhahood, I hope we all attain buddhahood together. I will bring myself and all beings to buddhahood at the same time.” This style, called the boatman-like or ferryer-like bodhicitta, is a little more selfish than the first, but it is still very unselfish. The third style, which really does have a little bit of selfishness in it, is the thought, “I really want to attain buddhahood. I really want to attain full awakening. But after I have attained it, I will not abandon beings. I will also liberate all beings. But first of all, I definitely want to attain buddhahood.” That is king-like bodhicitta, which has some selfishness in it, but because it contains the aspiration to liberate all beings, it is still authentic bodhicitta.

The style of generation of bodhicitta in the vajrayana sounds a lot like the king-like bodhicitta, but is not meant to be the king-like bodhicitta. The vajrayana attitude is simply realistic. If you do not attain buddhahood, you cannot liberate other beings. This attitude is not selfish; it is realistic. It could become selfish. You could turn it into king-like bodhicitta, or use it as an excuse for king-like bodhicitta. But it is not really meant to be generated in that spirit. The basic reasoning of vajrayana bodhicitta is, “All I want is to liberate all beings. I obviously cannot do that right now. If I become a bodhisattva, with bodhisattva realization, I can do something, but I cannot liberate them completely, as a buddha can. So, although what I want is to liberate beings and not myself, in order to do that effectively, I am going to have to attain buddhahood myself first.”

**Question:** Is there a Medicine Buddha practice that involves the laying on of hands?

**Rinpoche:** The laying on of hands could in some way be combined with the practice of visualizing a small form of the Medicine Buddha at the afflicted part of the ill person’s body.

**Question:** Rinpoche, I have another question about choosing between practices. In considering tonglen practice, and Medicine Buddha, how would we decide when to use either one, given that you have both transmissions?

**Rinpoche:** Do you mean for your own development, or in order to benefit another person?



**Question:** Tonglen that we use for helping others, and it helps us as well. Also, Pema Chödrön has talked about a way to use tonglen to help yourself.

**Rinpoche:** Both are equally beneficial in every way, in and of themselves. What you should emphasize in your practice is based upon what you have the greatest confidence in, what you have the greatest faith in, and what you have the greatest natural inclination for. So if you have greater confidence in tonglen, it will be more effective. If you have greater confidence in the Medicine Buddha practice, that will be more effective. Historically, we can see in the various lineages that some teachers have emphasized tonglen as their primary practice; other teachers have emphasized the Medicine Buddha or similar practices as their primary practice. It really depends upon your personal inclination.

### 3 MUDRAS, OR RITUAL GESTURES, HELP TO CLARIFY THE VISUALIZATION

---



SOME OF YOU HAVE INQUIRED about the mudras, ritual gestures, for this practice, so I will begin this morning's session by explaining them. As you know, the main element in our practice is meditation, including visualization, which is mental in nature. But we use our other faculties, body and speech, to clarify and reinforce this mental process. We use speech, for example, to clarify visualizations by reciting the liturgical descriptions and so on, and we use the body to clarify visualizations through physical postures and gestures called mudras. The main point, of course, is the visualization practice itself. So it is acceptable, especially under certain conditions, to do the practice entirely mentally, without the additional use of mudras.

The first place in this practice where a specific mudra is used is in the invitation of the deity—when you have already visualized yourself as the Medicine Buddha and have visualized the Medicine Buddha in front of you, and are requesting the actual wisdom deity, the Medicine Buddha, to approach and finally dissolve into you as the self-visualization and into the front visualization.<sup>43</sup>

This and other places in the practice are highlighted by the use of the Sanskrit language as part of the liturgy. The culmination of the invitation, the culmination of each section of offerings, as well as the essence mantra repeated during the main body of the practice are all said in Sanskrit. This is standard for all vajrayana practices. The reason for this is that the Buddha taught in Sanskrit, and it is taught that all buddhas of the future, as well, will teach in Sanskrit. So one uses Sanskrit for the highlights of the practice in order to cultivate a habit or form a connection with that language.

At the conclusion of the invitation in the liturgy you say the Sanskrit mantra, NAMO MAHA BEKENDZE SAPARIWARA BENZA SAMAYADZA DZA. What you are saying is, “Medicine Buddha, together

with your retinue, please recollect your vajra samaya and approach.” At that point you visualize that the Medicine Buddha and his retinue appear in the sky in front of you before dissolving into you and into the front visualization. The mudra that accompanies this mantra is called the mudra of assembly, and is made by crossing your arms at the wrists facing inward in front of your chest with the right one in front and the left one closer to your body, and snapping your fingers.

The significance of crossing your arms at the wrists represents the cohesiveness of unimpaired samaya, which brings the wisdom deities. The snapping of your fingers signifies immediately, right now. This actually has the specific meaning of referring to a unit of time called an instant. An instant in this case refers to the smallest division of time measured in any given system. For example, in the general system used in India at the time of the Buddha, the day was divided into thirty periods, which in turn were divided into thirty periods, and so on, until you got down to a period of time so small it is difficult even to describe, and that was designated as an instant or a moment. In the *Kalachakra Tantra*, the day is divided into hours, which are divided into subsections, which are divided further and further and further until one gets a period of time so small that in our perception it has no duration, and therefore is something like timelessness or emptiness. In any case, an instant refers to the shortest possible unit of time imaginable. The snapping of fingers in ritual use signifies or designates an instant. In the case of the invitation here, what you are saying by snapping your fingers is, “Please appear here and dissolve into me right now, without any delay whatsoever.” During the offerings, what you are saying when you snap your fingers at the conclusion of the offering mudras is, “Please accept these offerings right now. May they be available to you and may you enjoy them right now, without having to wait.” In the case of an ordination ceremony, such as the refuge ceremony, the snapping of fingers serves to designate the exact instant or moment in time at which you receive the vow.

Next one recites VAJRA SAMAYA TIKTRA LEN, which means, “Through the power of your recollection of your vajra samaya, please remain stable.” During the previous mantra, when you invited the wisdom deities, you invited them and dissolved them into yourself. When you recite VAJRA SAMAYA TIKTRA LEN you dissolve them into the front visualization and request them to remain there stable as a field of offering for the accumulation of merit. The gesture here is that your hands are turned

over so that they are palm up in front of your chest. It is very much like an elaborate or polite way of requesting someone to be seated.

Next, we come to the empowerment. The first five syllables of the empowerment mantra, OM HUM TRAM HRI AH ABHIKENTSA HUM,<sup>44</sup> refer to the five male buddhas of the five families. This is an empowerment both of yourself and of the front visualization. OM represents Vairochana, HUM Akshobhya, TRAM Ratnasambhava, HRI Amitabha, and AH Amogasiddhi.

These five buddhas of the five families are sometimes taught as buddhas in five different pure realms external to you. And sometimes they are taught as the five aspects of your innate or intrinsic wisdom. In the case of their being the five aspects of intrinsic wisdom, they correspond to the five wisdoms of a buddha. So, for example, Vairochana, who is of the buddha family, is the wisdom of the dharmadhatu. The wisdom of the dharmadhatu is the recognition of the unborn nature or emptiness of all things, which also pervades the other wisdoms, which is why it has that particular name.

These wisdoms are not really separate things. They are enumerated separately in order to show the qualities of wisdom. Generally speaking, one can say that the wisdom of a buddha includes two aspects, two types of wisdom, which are also not really separate. One of them is the wisdom that knows how things are, and that refers to the recognition of absolute truth or the nature of things. This aspect of wisdom is equivalent to the wisdom of the dharmadhatu.<sup>45</sup> It is that wisdom that knows how things are, or knows the nature of all things.

The other wisdom of a buddha is the wisdom that knows what there is. The wisdom that knows how things are knows the nature of all things, or absolute truth. But at the same time, a buddha also knows what there is, which is to say, the distinct features of those relative truths or relative things, of which the absolute truth is the nature. This means that, while buddhas recognize the unborn nature of each and every thing, the emptiness of each and every thing, they nevertheless see the manifestation or appearance of that thing clearly, without that clear seeing producing any kind of reification or illusion of solidity. Therefore, the way in which buddhas see relative truth is like seeing something in a mirror. The image is seen extremely clearly and vividly, but there is nothing really there in the mirror [other than mere appearance], and that is also known. So the perception or wisdom of a buddha, the recognition of relative truth, is called the mirror-like

wisdom, which is seeing that, while things are unborn, they nevertheless have their distinct appearances. Mirror-like wisdom is the Buddha Akshobhya.

The third wisdom of a buddha is called the wisdom of equality. This refers to the fact that, from the point of view of the mirror itself, regardless of what appears in it, while it appears distinctly and while the mirror has the capacity to display any image, there are no concepts on the part of the mirror about what it displays. There is no division of the display into self and other. There is no division of the display or image into good or bad, or into any other conceptual framework. This fact that buddhas in their wisdom, which recognizes this display, are free of all of these deluded concepts, is the wisdom of equality, which is the Buddha Ratnasambhava.

The fourth buddha is Amitabha, who embodies the wisdom of discrimination. A buddha—we, when we have attained buddhahood, or any other buddha—possesses the three wisdoms, which have been explained: the dharmadhatu wisdom, the mirror-like wisdom, and the wisdom of equality. These being the characteristics of the wisdom of a buddha, it is clear that they see or are aware without any kind of conceptualization. But because they are free of conceptualization, you might assume mistakenly that they are unable to distinguish between the characteristics of things. In other words, because buddhas are free of the concepts of good and bad, does that mean that they are unable to distinguish good from bad in relative truth? Because they are free of the concepts of red and white, does that mean that they cannot distinguish a red thing from a white thing? In fact, it does not. Buddhas are perfectly able to distinguish the distinct characteristics of relative things or relative phenomena. That wisdom is called the wisdom of discrimination, which is an aspect of the wisdom that knows what there is—from the standpoint of distinguishing the aspects of wisdom according to that which knows how things are and that which knows what there is. This corresponds to the Buddha Amitabha.

The fifth wisdom is the wisdom of accomplishment, which is embodied by the Buddha Amogasiddhi. This means that, because of the wisdom of a buddha—because a buddha possesses, for example, the wisdom of equality and the wisdom of discrimination—they are able spontaneously to accomplish their activity without conceptualization or effort. Such activity is unceasing, and uninterrupted. The activity of a buddha never fails to accomplish its aim in a timely way. This is what is meant by the wisdom

of accomplishment. So the empowerment that you receive at this point in the practice, while repeating the syllables OM HUM TRAM HRI AH, internally is the empowerment of the five wisdoms and externally is the empowerment of the five male buddhas.

There is a mudra that goes with each of these syllables. The mudra of Vairochana, which accompanies the saying of OM, is to clasp your hands, intertwining the fingers tightly so that the two hands make a fist, and then extending the two middle fingers joined together. The mudra of Akshobhya, which accompanies the saying HUM, is to clasp your hands making a fist with the two forefingers extended. The mudra of Ratnasambhava, which accompanies the syllable TRAM, is to clasp your hands making a fist with the two ring fingers extended and joined. The mudra of Amitabha, which accompanies the syllable HRI, is to clasp your hands making a fist with the two thumbs extended and joined. And finally, the mudra of Amogasiddhi, which accompanies the syllable AH, is to clasp your hands making a fist with the two little fingers extended and joined.

These mudras are connected with the way in which the five buddhas are perceived—and this is common to all tantras—as being present in the external world. The Buddha Vairochana of the buddha family is said to inhabit a realm in the center, called “densely arrayed.” The Buddha Akshobhya of the vajra family is said to inhabit a realm in the east, called “manifestly joyous.” The Buddha Ratnasambhava of the ratna or jewel family is said to inhabit a realm in the south, called “glorious.” The Buddha Amitabha of the padma or lotus family is said to inhabit a realm in the west, called “blissful” or *sukhavati*. And the Buddha Amogasiddhi of the karma or action family is said to inhabit a realm in the north, called “perfect” or “perfectly complete activity.” The central buddha, Vairochana, is seen as pervasive, pervading all of the other buddhas and pervading all of their activity. Each of the other four buddhas is also connected with a specific style of activity, a specific way of benefiting beings. Akshobhya embodies pacification. Ratnasambhava embodies enrichment and expansion. Amitabha embodies magnetizing. And Amogasiddhi embodies forceful or direct activity.

When we talk of these five realms, we say that they are in the east, the south, the west, the north, and the middle, but obviously these directions are mere designations. They have no absolute reality or location. We cannot really say what east is, because a place that is east of one place is going

to be west of another. It will be south of one and north of one. Is that place really east, or is it west? Maybe it is south, maybe it is north. You cannot say. So, the directions, of course, are empty. They are valid in relative truth. In a specific context that we have designated, we can meaningfully say that some place is east or west of another place. So they are valid in relative truth, but they are only valid relative to one another, and therefore have no absolute validity and are empty. So, we cannot really say where an eastern realm would be, except relative to our own body. Therefore, in the Buddhist tradition, we call wherever you are facing east.

So for that reason—and now these mudras are going to become a little more complicated—because east is identified as wherever you are facing, it is understood in invitation liturgies that a buddha invited from the east—as, for example, Akshobhya—will approach you from the front. A buddha invited from the south, like Ratnasambhava, will approach you from the direction of your right ear. A buddha invited from the west, like Amitabha, will approach behind you towards the back of your head. And a buddha invited from the north, like Amogasiddhi, will approach you from your left. So therefore, when you receive the empowerment from these five buddhas and then visualize that they dissolve into you, they dissolve into you from those directions. Therefore, the mudras that were previously demonstrated are touched to five points on your head. Because Vairochana, represented by the middle finger, is in the middle, you touch your clasped hands, making a fist with the middle finger extended, to the very center of the top of your head. Because Akshobhya, represented by the forefingers, is connected with the front, then you touch the clasped hands with the forefingers extended, to your forehead. Because Ratnasambhava, represented by the extended ring fingers, comes from the south, you touch the clasped hands with extended ring fingers, above your right ear. Because Amitabha, represented by the extended thumbs, approaches from the west, you touch your clasped hands with the thumbs extended to the back of your head or as close as you can get. Finally, because Amogasiddhi, represented by the extended little fingers, approaches from the north, you touch the clasped hands with the extended little fingers, to the left side of your head above your left ear. The making and touching of these mudras is all coordinated with the recitation of the syllables.

When you are actually performing these mudras, the first three are obvious. But when you get to HRI, representing Amitabha, the thumbs at the

back of your head, you do not go over the head. You go around from the right as far as you can get. Then you have AH on the left.

The performance of these five mudras while reciting OM HUM TRAM HRIH AH accompanies the receiving of empowerment from these five buddhas, who then dissolve into you. When you say the rest of the mantra, ABHIKENTSA HUM, in order to acknowledge that the five buddhas have dissolved into you, you extend your hands palm upward and then turn [or rotate] them in towards yourself until they are more or less palm downward, to represent the dissolution of the Buddhas into yourself.

Those are the mudras for the empowerment. Next we come to the mudras for the offerings.<sup>46</sup> The first offering mudra here accompanies the mantra word ARGHAM. ARGHAM refers to the offering of drinking water. So the mudra is making the shape with your hands of a vessel or container that could contain drinking water, and it is done in the way that Rinpoche just demonstrated [by joining the fingers at their tips and the fingers and palms along the outside edge of the little fingers and the inner edge of the palms as they face upward, with the thumbs resting on the edge of the palms and forefingers].

The second offering, PADYAM, represents water for washing the feet. The custom during the time of the Buddha was that water would be poured from a conch shell over your feet. So the mudra done at this point is to grasp the end of your forefingers with the last joint of your thumbs and extend the other fingers forward palms upward, which is the mudra of the conch, as Rinpoche demonstrated.

The third offering, PUPE, is the offering of flowers. The mudra depicts casting flower petals with your hands [the nails of the four fingers of both hands, held palms upward in a light fist restrained by the thumbs, suddenly released by the restraining thumbs and extended forward].

DHUPE is the offering of incense, and therefore the gesture or mudra with the hands represents containers of finely scented incense powder [both hands held in fists, fingers arranged on top of each other grasping the thumb, which points downward].

The next offering, ALOKE, represents lamps or lights. The position of the hands with the thumbs extended upward represents a lamp and its burning wick [same mudra as for incense, except that the thumbs, now pointing upward, are free of the fist-clenched fingers].

The next offering, GENDHE, represents the rubbing of perfumed wa-



ter onto the body, and so the gesture with the hands is like the gesture of anointing or rubbing perfumed water onto someone's body [both hands held, palms facing forward, perpendicular to the ground, fingers pointing upward, moving slightly].

The next offering, NAIVEDYE or NEWIDYE, is food, which is represented by the NAIVEDYE torma, which is found in the appropriate bowl on the shrine. The mudra here depicts that, with the hands held palms up and the ring fingers extended upward to depict that torma which is on the shrine.

SHAPDA, which means "sound" the first time it appears in this offering, is the offering of music. The gesture here is like the way that the clay drum would be beaten with the fingers [thumbs of each hand grasping the ring and little fingers, the middle finger and the pointing finger extended straight forward with the pointing finger on top, moving slightly up and down with a beating motion].

Following those eight offerings are the remaining five offerings of this section, which as you will remember, are offerings of the objects of the five senses. The first of these, RUPA, means form, and here refers to beautiful form. The mudra that represents it is the mudra of the mirror, with your right hand extended palm outward, and your left hand in a fist with the thumb extended upward and touching the palm of the right hand at the base as though it were the handle of a mirror. This represents the fact that forms are perceived like images or reflections in a mirror.

The second mudra is SHAPDA, which here refers to all sounds. The mudra, however, is always something representing a musical instrument. Some people at this second SHAPDA do the lute mudra, or guitar mudra, however, my own tradition is simply to repeat the previous drumming mudra.

GENDHE, which represents beautiful scents, gets the same mudra as it did before when it specifically represented perfume.

And RASA, which is the offering of tastes, gets the same mudra as ARGHAM, except in this case it is a container of food rather than a container of water.

And SAPARSHE, which represents tactile sensations, gets the mudra of holding aloft fine fabric, which is done by revolving the hands until the palms are facing outward and thumb and ring finger are touching.

When you say TRATITSA, which means individually, then you turn your hands so that the palms are up and snap your fingers.

During the next offering sections—offering the eight auspicious substances, the eight auspicious signs, and the seven articles of royalty—you continue to hold your hands joined in *angeli*, the mudra of supplication or prayer, as you do during all offerings sections. There is no specific mudra for these and no snapping of the fingers.

When we offer the mandala with the mantra, OM RATNA MANDALA HUM, there is the usual mandala mudra.

**Translator:** I guess there are a lot of people here who do not know this mudra. Put your hands more or less palm up. Interweave your fingers, with both sets of fingers visible above the palms, not with the fingers behind the backs of the hands. Then with your thumbs grab the ends of the little fingers of the opposite hands. And then with your forefingers, hook around the top joint of the middle fingers of the opposite hands. Then un-interweave your ring fingers so that they stick straight up back to back. That is the simplest way I know to describe it. And there's no finger snap.

**Rinpoche:** The remaining three sections of offering—ablution, drying, and dressing—have no mudras other than the palms being joined [in *angeli*, the mudra of supplication or prayer].

However, the way in which your palms are joined in these practices is quite specific. The hands are not pressed against one another so that the palms are flat against each other. There is space left between your palms, so that the shape of your hands is like a budding flower. It is therefore called the lotus mudra, and represents a lotus flower that is about to open. The lotus is a symbol of dharma in general. It is born in mud or in a swamp, but when the flower emerges, it is stainless and beautiful. So the lotus—and by extension the mudra—represents the practice of dharma, and therefore, in order to remind yourself of that, your palms are joined in these practices in that way.

If you have questions, feel free to ask them.

**Question:** Rinpoche, you have said that in the future the dharma would be taught in Sanskrit by other buddhas. Could you explain why that would be? Is there something about the Sanskrit language that connects us more closely with the enlightened state? Or will we in the future, as we practice dharma, as we come closer, hopefully, to the enlightened state, be able to understand and make these sounds more intelligibly? Or is this not a definitive teaching and thus to be interpreted from the standpoint of the time of the Buddha when this teaching was given?

**Rinpoche:** First of all, as to whether or not the statement that all buddhas of the future will teach in Sanskrit is a definitive statement or a statement with a hidden intention—which is to say, one which does not mean what it literally says, but means something that is indicated by what it literally says—is something I cannot resolve. I cannot say to you, “It is a definitive statement to be taken literally,” or, “It is a symbolic statement with a hidden meaning.” I cannot resolve this question because the source of this idea is the *Badhrakalpa Sutra*, the *Sutra of the Fortunate Eon*, and in that sutra the Buddha gives the names of the parents, the style of teaching, the length of teaching, the number and qualities of the retinue attending the teachings, and so on, for each of the one thousand buddhas of this particular kalpa. This includes the three buddhas who preceded him, and the others who will succeed him. It is in this sutra that he states, for example, that Maitreya will be the fifth buddha of this kalpa and the Lion’s Roar will be the sixth buddha. He discusses all of the thousand buddhas up to the very last one, called Rochana. In the same place where the Buddha predicts their coming, he says that they will all teach in Sanskrit. It would be very difficult to try to ascertain exactly what his intention was in saying that.

The effect of using Sanskrit in liturgical practices is basically to establish the blessing [of the original words of the Buddha] in the most important places in the sadhana—in the mantras, which are repeated,<sup>47</sup> and in the areas of the practice that are highlighted, such as the culmination of the invitation, the culmination individually of the various offerings, and so on. For this reason, then, even when these practices were undertaken outside of the Sanskrit-speaking world, these sections were left in the original language and remain untranslated. Whether or not as an implication of this we can consider Sanskrit a fundamentally superior language depends not so much on the idea of its being superior as its being sacred because we believe the Buddha taught in Sanskrit. There are some Buddhist traditions that maintain the view that the Buddha’s teachings were originally given in Pali. But the vajrayana tradition maintains that his original teachings for the most part were given in Sanskrit. Because of that, by using Sanskrit in liturgical practice, we feel that we bring the Buddha’s blessing, the blessing of the Buddha’s speech, into our practice.

**Question:** So, does this prediction then still fall under the teaching of impermanence?

**Rinpoche:** What do you mean?

**Question:** What I mean is, is this set in stone or does this also fall under the heading, as we're always taught, that nothing is permanent?

**Rinpoche:** The impermanence aspect of this is a fluctuation in the use of Sanskrit in the world. In the Buddha's time, people in the society in which the Buddha was living actually spoke Sanskrit. Now nobody speaks Sanskrit; it is considered a dead language. But according to the sutra, it will come back, and in that way Sanskrit will return to use, and then become a dead language, and then return to use again, and then become a dead language again, and so on. That is an instance of impermanence.

**Question:** Rinpoche, I'd like to share the tapes of these teachings with KTC sangha, and I'd like to know if that is an appropriate thing to do, and also whether it would be appropriate to practice the Medicine Buddha in a group including individuals who have not received the empowerment. And would it be appropriate to do the short Mahakala practice in the chant book alone at home?

**Rinpoche:** As for your first question, anyone can practice the Medicine Buddha, whether they have the empowerment or not. As far as instituting its practice in a group, if it were part of a KTC activity, you would need first to receive permission from the appropriate teachers. Secondly, if you have faith in the short Mahakala practice, it is certainly okay to do it at home.

**Question:** Rinpoche, this question is not directly related to the topic at hand, but since it involves issues of faith and devotion, I thought it might be relevant and beneficial. This has to do with the nature and appearance of the Gyalwang Karmapas in general. As you know I have been praying to Karmapa as part of my practice, and it is said in the Kagyu tradition that Karmapa is a tenth-level bodhisattva. I've definitely come to believe that, even though I've never had any direct contact with Karmapa. But once, when I was having difficulty in my practice, I went to read the songs in the *Kagyu Gurtso* of the Eighth Gyalwang Karmapa, Mikyo Dorje. And there Mikyo Dorje refers to himself as an ordinary individual. My small mind cannot encompass how such a high-level bodhisattva can think of himself as an ordinary individual. Rinpoche, would you please dispel my confusion?

**Translator:** Can I abbreviate that a little bit?

**Question:** Oh, please.

**Rinpoche:** This type of statement, like the one you mentioned by Gyalwang Mikyo Dorje in the *Kagyü Gurtso*, is typical of great teachers, because their primary responsibility is to serve as a good example for their students, which means that they have to display a manner that is free of arrogance. So, although it is not literally true that they are ordinary beings, they will nevertheless say things like, “I am a completely ordinary person, full of kleshas, with no qualities whatsoever.” By saying that, they display the importance of being free of arrogance. You should not take such statements literally.

**Question:** Rinpoche, is it still appropriate and beneficial to practice the Medicine Buddha sadhana if I have not practiced any ngöndro?

**Rinpoche:** It makes no difference.

**Question:** I attend births and help women during their labor, and I was wondering if there is something that I could do after the baby has arrived to honor the new being and the mother.

**Rinpoche:** Something will come in this afternoon’s teaching on the Medicine Buddha sutra that will answer that question.

**Question:** May I ask another question? I was wondering if you could talk about what would be a proper mode of conduct if you found yourself being attacked by a sexual predator. If you were able to defend yourself, what would be the right thing to do?

**Translator:** You mean, how?

**Question:** Yes.

**Translator:** What to do to them?

**Question:** Would it be okay to hurt them?

**Translator:** How to hurt them or how not to hurt them?

**Question:** What would be the right thing to do?

**Translator:** How to get out of it?

**Rinpoche:** I have to think about that one.

**Question:** Rinpoche, when I am here, it becomes very clear to me that the best thing to do would be to go home and organize my life so that I am practicing many hours per day. What happens when I actually go back home is that the connection to the teachings seems more distant, and what seems more immediate and real are the needs around me. I begin to have

the thought that it is actually selfish or self-absorbed to practice a lot, and that it is more beneficial to help other people. I think this is a fault. Could you comment on that?

**Rinpoche:** Well actually both are correct. Neither is a fault. To wish to practice a great deal is correct, and to be attentive to the needs of those around you, and to put them first, is also correct. So you have to gauge the exact balance according to your particular situation, using your own insight. The only rule of thumb is not to be too extreme in either way. Not to be so extreme in the amount of practice that you pay no attention to those around you and their needs, or so extreme in limiting your practice for their benefit that you do not practice very much at all.

**Question:** Rinpoche, I have some confusion about the visualization. I think I understood you to say that the Medicine Buddha visualization is a mirror of my own innate Medicine Buddha. If he is a mirror, why do you say that he is bigger than mine? Doesn't that create some confusion?

**Translator:** Do you mean that where your right hand is, is going to be his left hand? Do you mean it literally, or do you mean just that he is the same size?

**Question:** He portrayed the front visualization as larger than the one that I am visualizing as myself. And I thought that somewhere it was also being said that we are the same. So why am I portraying the front one as larger? That would create some insecurity in me that I am never quite good enough.

**Translator:** Larger, do you mean that his body is bigger? You are not just talking about the retinue?

**Question:** No. It kind of makes me feel like he has got more power than I do.

**Translator:** He never said that the front visualization was larger.

**Question:** It is in the text, maybe.

**Translator:** Oh, that is where it is.

**Rinpoche:** Well, the author of the text must have had a specific reason for saying it at that time.

**Question:** I imagined it was to give me more confidence, but at some point I guess I could visualize him to be the same size as the self-visualization.

**Rinpoche:** You can visualize them as the same size.

**Question:** Rinpoche, is samaya primarily fulfilled by faith and devotion, overriding possibly completing a practice? Say, for instance, you are doing some practices and then you encounter a practice like this one and decide you want to do this one. Is it primarily the faith and devotion as opposed to the actual steps of completing any particular practice?

**Rinpoche:** Yes, basically samaya is maintained by your faith and devotion.

## 4 THE BENEFITS OF HEARING AND RECOLLECTING THE MEDICINE BUDDHA'S NAME

---



*The Sutra of the Medicine Buddha* first explains the twelve aspirations of the Medicine Buddha, after which the Buddha begins to talk about the benefits of recollecting or even hearing the Medicine Buddha's name. The first is that, if even those who are most avaricious hear the name of the Medicine Buddha, they will be freed from avarice and from its results. The second is that, if those who behave immorally hear the name of the Medicine Buddha, they will come to behave morally and therefore will be freed from the karmic result of immorality. The third benefit is for those who are so intensely jealous and competitive that they always praise themselves and try to maximize in appearance their own qualities and prestige and always deride others. Such persons devote themselves to defeating and deriding others, and to making others look bad. If they continue in this course of action, they will be reborn in one of the three lower states—the animal realm, the preta realm, or the hell realm—and will experience a great deal of suffering. But if they hear the name of the Medicine Buddha, through the blessing and inspiration of that hearing, they will become much less competitive, will cease deriding others, and will thereby be freed from the karmic results of such actions.

What will happen as a result of such persons' hearing the Medicine Buddha's name is that their attitude will change. They will become more insightful, and through the development of that insight, they will become more skillful and appropriate in their choices of actions. At the same time, their minds will start to calm down and become tranquil. They will eventually become diligent in virtue and will find themselves surrounded by virtuous friends—friends that have virtuous intentions and who also behave appropriately. Without the intervening blessing of the Medicine Buddha attendant upon hearing his name, given their previous course of action,



they would be most unlikely to be surrounded by virtuous friends. The virtuous friends by whom they find themselves surrounded—including teachers, but also just friends in general—are one of the conditions that influence them and cause them to change their ways. When someone is intensely and ruthlessly competitive and jealous, they harm others and accumulate a great deal of negative karma. This intense competitiveness and its attendant lifestyle is referred to as the lasso or noose of mara [Tibetan: *shakpa*]. This noose is cut when the person hears the name of the Medicine Buddha. Up to that point, the limitation in their outlook, which reinforces their active and aggressive competitiveness, is an obscuration or ignorance that is like being stuck inside an eggshell. Unable to break out of the eggshell, they are unable to grow. Their innate capacity for insight and wisdom is prevented from developing. When they hear the name of the Medicine Buddha, they break out of the eggshell, and this causes their innate capacity for insight and wisdom to develop. This insight dries up their kleshas, especially the klesha of jealousy, which is like a wild river. This river gradually dries up. Of course, this does not happen automatically or without effort. Through the blessing of hearing the name of the Medicine Buddha, such people encounter teachers and other people who influence them in a virtuous direction, while at the same time their own insight is developing. As a result, they engage actively in methods that will eradicate or dry up the kleshas.

That is the short term benefit. In the long term, the person who hears the name of the Medicine Buddha will be freed from the sufferings of birth, aging, and death. Birth, of course, is the beginning of aging, which always culminates in death, so birth and death are all considered one process. While the sufferings of birth, aging, and death are normal events in our lives, through hearing the name of the Medicine Buddha, one is freed eventually or ultimately from the suffering associated with them. That is the third benefit.

The fourth benefit of hearing the name of the Medicine Buddha is that it pacifies the disputatious. There are some people who just like to fight. They dispute at any opportunity. They like to cause discord. They like to slander and harm other people any way they can. They harm people physically, verbally, and sometimes by cursing them magically. They are malevolent and can actually harm people. In this case, if either the malevolent person or the victim of that person's malevolence hears the name of the

Medicine Buddha, the whole situation will calm down. If the malevolent person, the curser, hears the name of the Medicine Buddha, then their malevolence will decrease. They will lose their wish to go around fighting with people and cursing them. If the victim of their malevolence hears the name of the Medicine Buddha, the malevolent person will be unable to harm them. And if they have enlisted local [demonic] spirits in the service of their malevolent aims and ambitions, the spirits will be powerless to harm the intended object of their curse. This does not mean that through the power of the Medicine Buddha these spirits will be violently repelled. It means that the spirits will become benevolent, and eventually the person who hears the name of the Medicine Buddha and is the proposed object of the malevolence and the person acting malevolently—the magician or whatever—will also become benevolent.

To this point we have explained the alleviation of the defects, the negative conduct, and the negative results of avarice, immorality, jealousy, and malevolence. Next, the sutra states the direct benefits of the name itself, the qualities and various other benefits that the hearing and recollection of the name will bring. It says that any man or woman with faith who recollects the name of the Medicine Buddha, engages in the moral conduct of the eightfold renewal and purification commitments or vows for a month or a week or a few days—or otherwise behaves themselves properly with body and speech, and aspires to rebirth in the realm of Sukavhati, the realm of Amitabha, will be reborn there miraculously immediately after their death. Those who do not wish to be reborn in Sukavhati will be reborn in the realms of the gods and enjoy the splendors and enjoyments of those realms. And—although normally when one is born in a god realm, after the merit that has produced that rebirth is exhausted, one is then reborn in a more unpleasant form of samsara—[those who recollect the name of the Medicine Buddha and conduct themselves appropriately] will not suffer a lower rebirth. Their lifetimes will continue to be pleasant. If they wish in particular to be reborn human again, they will be reborn in the most fortunate and pleasant circumstances within the human realm. They will be healthy, courageous, intelligent, and benevolent, and because of their characteristics, they will continue to behave in a positive way and inspire others to do so as well.

To this point in the sutra the Buddha has stated five benefits of the recollection of the name—the alleviation of four defects and the direct

benefits. Next, Manjushri addresses the Buddha and the assembly who are listening to the teaching and describes the importance of the sutra. He says that it is important to recollect this sutra, to read the sutra, to write the sutra, to keep a copy of the sutra around you, to venerate the sutra by offering flowers and incense and other offerings to it, and to proclaim the meaning of the sutra to others. If these things are done, he says, many benefits will accrue. The entire region in which these activities are occurring will be blessed and will be protected by the four great kings and other deities who are present in the mandala.

In response to what Manjushri has said, the Buddha adds that whoever venerates the Medicine Buddha should construct or acquire an image of the Medicine Buddha—a statue, a painting, or a depiction of some type—or should visualize the Medicine Buddha. Venerating that for a week or for whatever period, they should intensely supplicate the Medicine Buddha, eating pure food—which means food that is not gained through harming others—washing frequently, wearing clean clothes, and so on, and in that way venerate the sutra and the image by making physical offerings to them, including all sorts of things such as parasols and victory banners and so on.

For this veneration to be effective, the one who is venerating has to have a good intention. A good intention here is defined as having four characteristics. The first is that the venerating mind be stainless. Stainless here means free of the stain of selfishness or competitiveness. Your intention in doing the practice must be not merely to benefit yourself, but to benefit all beings, and your intention must be free of competitiveness. The second quality of a good intention is that it be unsullied. Unsullied here means that you have unsullied faith, faith without reservation, faith that is without a feeling of antipathy towards the object of the faith, faith that is without such crippling doubt that it does not function.

The third characteristic of a good intention is the absence of malevolence. Malevolence can take many different forms. There is manifest anger, anger that is evident and will be acted on right away. There is resentment. Resentment is still malevolence, but it is something that you carry under the surface and that waits for a future time to emerge. There is spitefulness, which makes you want to say or do something nasty. And then there is wanting to harm people in a more organized way than merely being spiteful. The absence of all of these forms of malevolence is an attitude that sincerely wishes that others be happy and that they be free from suffering,

which means that if you see a being that is happy, you delight in that and want that being to be even more happy and to be free from whatever suffering they are still afflicted by. If you see a being that is suffering, you want that being to be free from all the suffering that they are undergoing and to be completely happy.

The fourth characteristic of a good intention is impartiality, an attitude that directs benevolence equally to all beings without exception. There is no preference for some beings, and less concern for others. The attitude is that all beings are more or less fellow travelers on the same road.

With this kind of good intention, if the practitioner physically circumambulates the image of the Medicine Buddha, mentally recollects the twelve aspirations of the Medicine Buddha, and either recites the sutra of the Medicine Buddha or at least recollects the benefits of the name of the Medicine Buddha as stated in the sutra, then they will accomplish their wishes.

The reason that it says that they will accomplish their wishes is that people have different wishes. Some people wish for longevity, and they can accomplish longevity through engaging in these activities—through supplicating the Medicine Buddha, through circumambulating the image, through having faith in and devotion for the Medicine Buddha, and so on. Some people do not care much how long they live; they are more interested in wealth, and so such a person would wish to achieve wealth and could do so by this method. Some people are not concerned about wealth either, but want to have children. And they can have children through this method, although obviously not through this method exclusively.<sup>48</sup> Some people wish for success in the secular world, in business and so on, and they can achieve such success through this method. The significance of this is that you can achieve what you wish through doing the same secular or business things, but with much less effort.

In the same way, if someone is afflicted with nightmares or bad dreams, experiences inauspicious signs, sees things that they think are unlucky, or experiences things that disturb them and produce anxiety, if they make offerings to the Medicine Buddha, pray to the Medicine Buddha, recollect the sutra and the Medicine Buddha's twelve aspirations, and so forth, then the inauspicious signs and bad dreams and so on will gradually disappear.

And not only will inauspicious signs disappear, but if you are in a situation where you are endangered by such things as fire, water, poison, or weapons, by falling off a cliff, or falling victim to any other sort of accident,

or by elephants, lions, tigers, bears, poisonous snakes, scorpions, or centipedes—if you are endangered by any of those things—then if you supplicate the Medicine Buddha, those dangers will disappear.

And also supplication to the Medicine Buddha will protect you from the dangers of war—being caught in the middle of a war—of robbery, and of banditry.

If someone who has faith in the buddhadharma, and especially in the Medicine Buddha, whether man or woman, takes some form of ordination—such as the refuge vow, the vow of an upasaka or upasika [the vows of a lay disciple], the bodhisattva vow, or monastic ordination—through the blessing of the Medicine Buddha they will be able in most cases to maintain them. But if such a person does not maintain them, then they will become depressed. They will think, “I undertook such and such a commitment and I was unable to keep it. I am obviously someone who cannot accomplish anything I set out to do. Things are not going very well, terrible things are going to happen to me in this life, and after I die I am definitely going to be reborn in the lower realms.” If this happens to you, then if you supplicate the Medicine Buddha, make offerings to the Medicine Buddha, and have devotion to the Medicine Buddha, you will be freed from the danger of those disasters and inferior rebirths.

The next thing mentioned in the sutra is actually the answer to a question that was asked earlier. It says in the sutra, when a woman is giving birth to a child, if she expects great difficulty—great agony and suffering in doing so—if she supplicates the Medicine Buddha with devotion, then the birth will occur free from extreme difficulty. The child will be born easily, without harm to the mother or the child, and the child will be healthy, intelligent, and will be strong from birth.

At this point the Buddha has stated a number of extraordinary benefits of supplicating and making offerings to the Medicine Buddha. Next the Buddha addresses not Manjushri, but Ananda. He addresses Ananda because Ananda is not at this point a great bodhisattva. He is a shravaka, a practitioner of the hinayana path. The Buddha has taught the sutra and explained its benefits. He has talked about the extraordinary qualities of the Medicine Buddha, his twelve aspirations and their effects, the effects of the recollection of the name of the Medicine Buddha, and so on. So addressing Ananda, the Buddha says, “Ananda, do you believe what I have said? Do you have faith in this, or do you have doubt about it?”

In response to the Buddha's question, Ananda says, "I have no doubt of the truth of what you have said. I believe everything you have said. In fact, I believe everything you have ever said, because I have witnessed the qualities of your body, speech, and mind. I have witnessed your miracles, and I have witnessed your immersion in samadhi. So I know it is impossible for you to mislead beings, and I have no doubt of the validity of anything you say. But, there are some beings who will not believe this. There are some beings who, when they hear this, will want to think that all of this is impossible or untrue. Will they not incur tremendously negative karma through hearing about this buddha and this sutra and having antipathy for them, or disbelief?" So he ends by asking the Buddha a question.

The reason that Ananda asks this question is that in theory there could be a problem in this situation. Theoretically, if someone thinks untrue what a buddha has said about another buddha and their benefits and blessings, that could become an obstacle to that being's progress towards awakening. But the Buddha answers as follows: "Ananda, there is in fact no such danger in this case. It is possible that a being might initially disbelieve these things, but since they have heard the name of the Medicine Buddha, then through the blessing of having heard that name, it will be impossible for their disbelief and antipathy to last very long, which is an instance of the qualities and power of this buddha. This is something that is so profound only bodhisattvas can understand it."<sup>49</sup> But ultimately it means that one's initial disbelief will not become an obstacle to one's liberation, and will not cause one to accumulate such negative karma that one will be reborn in the lower realms and so on. If someone has doubts, disbelief, or even antipathy towards this sutra, it is not going to be a big problem because of the blessing imparted by the Buddha in the way he taught the sutra and because of the aspirations of the Medicine Buddha himself.

This is important to know, because from time to time, of course, we do have doubts. We read something in a sutra such as this and we think, "But that is just impossible." And then we think, "Oh no, I have wrong views about the sutra; something terrible is going to happen to me." In any case, this is not going to be a problem here.

I am going to stop here for this afternoon. It has occurred to me that over the last few days I have been talking quite a lot, and I have not practiced with you or sat with you at all. As people often ask me to meditate with them, we are going to meditate now for a few minutes.

## 5 REGULAR SUPPLICATION OF THE MEDICINE BUDDHA BRINGS PROTECTION

---



**W**HEN YOU RECEIVE INSTRUCTION in dharma, the motivation with which you do so is extremely important. Recognize that the instructions you have received are a basis for your practice of dharma, and that your practice of dharma is of great benefit. This benefit is not limited to you alone or only to a few—yourself and a few others—but ultimately the benefit of your practice will be enjoyed by all beings who fill space. Therefore, when you receive the teachings in the beginning, do it with that recollection and with the motivation that by receiving these instructions, by meditating on and supplicating the Medicine Buddha, by studying his sutra, and so on, you will be able to do the practice so that you can bring about the liberation of all beings.

We concluded last time with the presentation of the benefits of the sutra and of recollecting the name of the Medicine Buddha. The next event in the dialogue is that the great Bodhisattva Chagdrol, one of the sixteen bodhisattvas in the retinue of the Medicine Buddha and therefore present at this teaching by the Buddha Shakyamuni, arises from his seat, adopts the posture that Manjushri had adopted in order to request this teaching, and addresses the Buddha. In addressing the Buddha and the entire gathering here, Chagdrol is not actually asking a question. He is himself stating further benefits of the sutra. He begins by saying that it was most kind of the Buddha to teach the sutra, to explain the twelve aspirations of the Medicine Buddha and their effects, to explain the benefits of the sutra and of the name, and so on. Then he says that he has something to add, and says that through the power of the Medicine Buddha, if someone becomes extremely sick—so sick that they are in agony and are surrounded by their family and their friends, and the family also is agonized by the sickness of the person—and even if it gets to the point where the person appears to be dy-

ing—when their perception of this world is becoming more and more vague and they seem to be starting to perceive the next world, the intermediate state—if even at that time there is intense supplication to the Medicine Buddha, through the blessing of the Medicine Buddha that person may be revived.

Chagdrol continues, “Because such benefits as these are possible—benefits both for this and future lives—men and women with faith should venerate, worship, and supplicate the Medicine Buddha. This is extremely important.”

At that point Ananda addresses the Bodhisattva Chagdrol, saying, “While you say it is important to make offerings to and to worship the Medicine Buddha, how should we do this?” In response Chagdrol says, “In order to free oneself and others from sickness and suffering, it is important to recollect the name of the Medicine Buddha seven times during the day and seven times during the night.”

Now, when it says in the sutra that there will be such and such benefits from merely hearing, recollecting, or keeping in mind the name of the Medicine Buddha, this does literally mean that to some extent there will be some benefit from merely hearing, merely remembering, or merely keeping the name in mind. But mainly, when it says the recollection of the name, it means something more than the simple recollection of the name per se. It means the recollection of the qualities of the Medicine Buddha, the recollection of the name in appreciation of the Medicine Buddha’s qualities, with an attitude of sincere faith and great enthusiasm. Furthermore, it means not simply the appreciation that there is a buddha in a certain realm far away who has such and such qualities, but includes the actual wish to emulate the Medicine Buddha, the wish to achieve the same buddhahood, to enact the same aspirations and benefits for beings, and therefore the wish to diligently engage in the path in order to attain that same state. To recollect the name really means to recollect and know the Medicine Buddha’s qualities and to actually engage enthusiastically in the path leading to the attainment of those qualities. Now, it is not the case that there are no benefits whatsoever to simply hearing the name per se; there are. But ultimately the great benefits which arise from the blessing of the name of the Medicine Buddha arise from practice based upon devotion to the Medicine Buddha, and not merely from simply hearing his name.

Chagdrol continues to address Ananda, saying that if the practitioner



venerates and prays to the Medicine Buddha, then “the monarch will be fully empowered.” This literally means that the monarch of the country in which this veneration is occurring will be properly empowered as the monarch. But what it implies or is saying is that the whole country in which the practice occurs will become happy, which is symbolized as the proper empowerment of that country’s monarch. This means that through the practitioner’s practice, sickness, warfare, the action of malevolent spirit—such as the spirits connected with the various constellations, planets, and stars—disasters such as untimely wind, excessive rainfall, or drought, and epidemics and civil strife will all be averted. For these to be averted the practitioner must pray to and venerate the Medicine Buddha with great love and compassion.

In other words, through supplication of the Medicine Buddha disasters will be averted, sickness and the malevolent influence of spirits will diminish, and other problems or upheavals in the country in which the practice occurs will be pacified. This means that while we practice dharma and, therefore, supplicate the Medicine Buddha for the benefit of all beings, by doing so we also secure our own happiness and the benefit of the country and region in which we practice.

Ananda then asks the Bodhisattva Chagdrul another question. He asks, “How is it possible through the supplication and blessing of the Medicine Buddha for someone who is almost dead to be awakened in the manner that Chagdrul has described?” And Chagdrul says that this is possible because the person’s life and vitality are not really exhausted. A condition exists that has almost caused their death, and that will cause their death if it is not removed. But it can be removed. He then lists nine different conditions of untimely death—untimely here meaning unnecessary—and says that through supplication of the Medicine Buddha it is sometimes possible to remove these conditions, thereby averting death and allowing the person to revive.

Then the twelve yaksha chieftains, who have been present throughout the Buddha’s teaching and have heard everything that has passed up to this point, address the Buddha as a group. They express their appreciation for having heard the sutra. They say, “We are most fortunate in this way to have heard the name of the Medicine Buddha and to have heard of his qualities and benefits, because simply through having heard this teaching we are freed from the fear of falling into lower realms.” They say this be-

cause they are mundane gods<sup>50</sup> at that point in time, and without having heard the sutra would be in the same danger as ourselves of falling into a lower rebirth. But they are confident that, having heard the name and the benefits of the Medicine Buddha, they are no longer in danger of being reborn in the three lower realms. Therefore, they say, “We are delighted by this and we all take refuge, therefore, in the Buddha, in the dharma, and in the sangha.” Because they have been inspired by hearing the sutra, by hearing about the Medicine Buddha’s name, and so forth, they take refuge and commit themselves to being beneficial to sentient beings and to never harming them. And so in a sense, they also generate bodhicitta and promise to protect beings.

In addition, the twelve yaksha chieftains say, “Especially, we will protect any place where there is the sutra of the Medicine Buddha and we will protect any persons and any place where there are persons who venerate the Medicine Buddha.” In that way the twelve yaksha chieftains—and also the four great kings—vow to protect the sutra and its followers, and to free all of these beings from harm.

In response, the Buddha addresses the twelve yaksha chieftains and their followers, saying, “Excellent. As you say, having heard the name of the Medicine Buddha you are now free of the danger and fear of falling into lower states. Your delight and confidence in this, the gratitude you have expressed, and especially your commitment to the welfare of beings and of the teachings that this has inspired in you are excellent.”

Now, for this reason, whether you regard it as the blessing of the Medicine Buddha himself and of his name, or as the protection of the twelve yaksha chieftains, if you regularly supplicate the Medicine Buddha, it will protect you. I can speak of this from my own experience. Once when I was living at Rumtek Monastery in Sikkim, I needed to go into town. There was a car that regularly went from the monastery into town, and I knew the driver and had expressed my need to go that day. But for some reason he didn’t wait for me. He left without me. So I found another car to go to town in, and as a result I am still alive. The first car got into a terrible accident, and while the driver survived, the passengers were all killed. Especially because I am so fat, I would definitely have been squished for sure. So I regard it as the blessing of the three jewels that my life was saved, because there was no obvious reason why he should have left without me.

Now the reason that I connect this with the Medicine Buddha is that

sometime before that I had gone into the presence of His Holiness Sakya Trizin Rinpoche<sup>51</sup> and had requested a divination from him as to whether or not I was facing any obstacles. He said, “If you will do the Medicine Buddha practice one hundred times, then you will be free from whatever obstacles might otherwise affect you.” And so I did this very Medicine Buddha practice that we have been studying one hundred times, and I think that is why I was not killed in that accident. So when it says here that the Medicine Buddha practice will protect you from untimely death through poison and accidents, and so on, I believe it.

At this point, the Buddha has finished teaching the main body of the sutra. The Bodhisattva Chagdrul has made his remarks and the twelve yaksha chieftains have expressed their appreciation and commitment. At that point Ananda arises once again and addresses the Buddha, thanking him for teaching the sutra and saying, “Now that you have given this teaching, what should we call it in the future? This teaching will have to have a name.”

And the Buddha says, “You can call it either The Twelve Great Aspirations of the Medicine Buddha, or you can call it The Vow and Commitment of the Twelve Yaksha Chieftains.”

Finally, after the Buddha has given the name by which the sutra is to be known in the future, all of those receiving the teaching, foremost among them Manjushri, Vajrapani, and the other bodhisattvas, as well as the twelve yaksha chieftains and so on, express their delight and rejoicing in the sutra’s having been taught and their having heard it and say, “Excellent,” and so forth.

And then, at the very end of the sutra, it says, “That is the completion of the *Sutra of the Great Aspirations of the Medicine Buddha*.” That line is present at the end to show that the sutra is complete. It is entirely possible that one could have in hand only part of a sutra without the end of it. To show that it is complete and goes all the way to the end, those words are added.

That completes our discussion of the *Medicine Buddha Sutra*, so if you have any questions, we have some time this morning.

**Question:** Thank you Rinpoche. May I ask for a definition of a yaksha? Is it a human being? What is the Tibetan?

**Translator:** *Nöjin*.

**Question:** Is it a human being, is it other than a human being?

**Rinpoche:** Yakshas are not human. They are nonhuman beings who are most often perceived as gods of wealth.

**Question:** When they were attending this teaching of the Buddha Shakyamuni, would they have been seen by human beings who were there? I mean by ordinary human beings, not by great bodhisattvas and so forth?

**Rinpoche:** The way it is put in the sutra, it sounds as though everybody could see them.

**Question:** And do they have flesh bodies or do they have bodies of light?

**Rinpoche:** I do not know.

**Question:** And if they are worldly deities, have they gotten enlightened in the meantime? And if they have not, why are we prostrating to them?

**Rinpoche:** Well, I do not know if they have attained awakening, but because at that time they promised to protect the Buddha's teachings, they become dharmapalas, and we take refuge in them as mundane dharmapalas.

**Question:** I see, but if they show up, do we have to do what they tell us?

**Rinpoche:** You had probably better.

**Question:** Rinpoche, in the other Buddhist practices, which many of us have done—shamatha, vipashyana, the various sadhanas, and so forth—I have great confidence. Even though I may not be a good practitioner, I have great confidence that they lead to the ultimate goal. But I am wondering if they have any effect on health as we conventionally understand it, because many times it seems they do not. Or I do not know. Sometimes I feel very sick, so I am wondering if Rinpoche would comment on that.

**Translator:** Which practices? Are you talking about all of them as a group or the vajrayana practices in particular?

**Question:** Tonglen, shamatha, vipashyana, and the various sadhanas and that sort of thing.

**Rinpoche:** Well, the main yidam sadhanas like Vajrayogini and Chakrasamvara are not particularly said to have much effect on sickness, but practices such as shamatha can be very helpful for sickness.

**Question:** I know of many people who are not here who would be very happy and grateful if they had been here. Of course, that is not possible. But I am wondering about how to work with this in the future. For instance, if we had the tapes of the teachings from this retreat, would it be

acceptable in a center like ours in Victoria or in other places to have a class in which we would play the tapes with the idea that Rinpoche would come sometime in the future to our center, maybe do a program, and give the empowerment? Those people would have to understand, they would either be Buddhist or take refuge as part of the empowerment.

**Rinpoche:** Sure.

**Question:** Rinpoche, following up on that same question, as Rinpoche knows, in the Shambhala centers there has always been a great effort made to protect the teachings, especially the vajrayana teachings, and so this is sort of a new situation for us in terms of the instruction that this can be made more available. And so there are still issues going on about how to do that properly. I am just wondering if Rinpoche could elaborate a little bit more on some other possibilities for presenting these teachings properly—so that people actually receive proper instruction and understand what is going on while at the same time making them more available.

**Rinpoche:** I think you can make it as freely available as possible, because there is no possibility of anyone getting into trouble with this. This is connected with the part of the sutra in which Ananda addresses the Buddha, saying, “Is there not a possibility that people hearing about this and disbelieving it might accumulate negative karma and be worse off than if they had not heard it in the first place?” And in answer to that the Buddha says, “No, even if they initially react with disbelief or even antipathy, the blessing of the Medicine Buddha itself will cause their minds to change.”

**Question:** Is the front visualization a mirror image of the self-visualization or is it the other way around?

**Translator:** By mirror image do you mean that your right hand is like that and that his left hand would be like that?

**Question:** Yes, mirror image.

**Rinpoche:** It is not literally a mirror image. In other words, in both the self- and front visualizations the right hand of the Medicine Buddha is extended holding the arura and the left hand in both cases is holding a begging bowl on the lap.

**Question:** Rinpoche, there have been lots of instructions for sadhana practitioners about how to visualize, and I would just like to hear your instructions to us about how to do the self-visualization properly, given that we have all these attachments to our bodies and to ourselves and that it

is difficult to work with that situation. I wanted to hear how you would instruct us to properly visualize the self as the deity.

**Rinpoche:** Well, here you are not trying to—and you do not have to—first get rid of the fixation on your body. The idea is that you replace the fixation on your ordinary body by adding to that the fixation on your body as the body of the Medicine Buddha.

**Question:** Forgive me, Rinpoche, I feel very much like the person that Ananda was talking about, though I want very much to believe. When I was a little girl in my convent in London in 1939, the nuns told me that if I prayed with great devotion and sincerity to Jesus to make Hitler a good man, the war would not happen; we would be able to prevent it and be protected from it. So, of course I felt I didn't have enough devotion, and I felt very bad about it. My heart really breaks to think of people in Tibet who are much more evolved than I was and have much more devotion, who are doing the Medicine Buddha practice and still they have war. Would you please shed some light on this?

**Rinpoche:** Well, first of all, as I said, the result of dharma practice is usually not immediate. It usually does not manifest as an immediate and dramatic or miraculous transformation of the circumstances. I mentioned for example that if you pray for wealth you are not immediately going to have a shower of gold come from the sky. But there is always a benefit. The benefit manifests as an effect that emerges gradually over a long term and maybe as a transformation of circumstances, as in the story that I told you. Now, for example, I would not say that your prayers as a child just before the outbreak of the Second World War were wasted. For example, you were not killed in the London Blitz, but many other people were.<sup>52</sup> And as for Tibet, of course as everybody knows Tibet was overcome by warfare. And we simply have to accept the fact that when a very large and populous country invades a small one, they are going to win. It is very hard to escape from that. If we look at it from a political point of view, we would have to say that Tibet was lost, but from a dharmic point of view, the dharma tradition of Tibet is far from lost. In fact it is doing better than it was before. It used to be that in Tibet, if someone actually travelled from Tibet as far as Kalimpong in northern India, that was a real journey. That was really expanding, bringing the teachings across the world. But now there is almost nowhere on this planet where there are not Tibetan Buddhist dharma centers, Tibetan stupas, retreats, and so on.

**Question:** Could you elaborate on what is in the small picture you gave us?

**Rinpoche:** On the top, the red seated figure is the Buddha Amitayus, the buddha of longevity. On the bottom are the two bodhisattvas. The yellow one is Manjushri and the white one is Chagdrol.

**Question:** Is there an end to experience once we attain buddhahood?

**Translator:** From the point of view of that buddha?

**Question:** Well yes, I suppose. But also, once everyone in the mahayana view is liberated, is there a cessation of experience? Or what happens exactly?

**Translator:** So, are there two questions? When one person attains enlightenment, do they cease to experience, and when everybody attains enlightenment, is everything going to be over?

**Question:** Or what happens? Yes.

**Rinpoche:** When someone attains full awakening, buddhahood, they do not cease to experience. What they experience is by our standards inconceivable, and all that can be said about it is that it is utterly pure. All of the appearances they undergo are pure, the environment in which they experience themselves is a pure realm, and so on.

Implicit in your second question is the question, “Will there ever come a time when all beings will have attained buddhahood?” This question has to be asked before you can ask what will happen then. And the answer is no. There will never come a specific time when samsara will be over for all beings. There will never come, it is taught, a time when all beings without a single exception will have attained buddhahood, because beings are infinite in number. And when we say, “I resolve to do this and that until samsara is completely emptied,” we do so in order to generate an open ended and unlimited aspiration and commitment. We say that, not because we think that there will come a specific time when samsara will be emptied and our contract terminated, but because we do not want to have a limited aspiration. We do not want to have an aspiration that says, “I will perform benefit for beings, but only for three years or only for this long.”

Now, returning to your first question, there are contexts in which it is taught, for example in the common Middle Way School presentation of the awakening of a buddha, that after awakening, that buddha exists only in the perception of others, both pure and impure, and does not experience himself or herself. But in the vajrayana that is not taught. In the vajrayana

it is definitely taught that the real sambhogakaya realm, the true or perfect sambhogakaya, is in fact self-experience; it is how a buddha experiences himself or herself.

**Question:** Rinpoche, you have gone into great detail about the sutra tradition and about how the Medicine Buddha came to be known in this world. That knowledge of the Medicine Buddha actually originated with the Buddha Shakyamuni, and that gives me great confidence in terms of the origin of this practice, because I have confidence in the Buddha Shakyamuni himself. However, a large part of the practice that you have given us is also tantric in nature, and the very detailed visualizations clearly come from somewhere else. Can you give some details about their origins so that we can have similar confidence in and knowledge about their origins?

**Rinpoche:** This practice is a combination of sutra and tantra. I have explained its sutra origin. Basically it doesn't have a tantric origin going back to the Buddha Shakyamuni independent of its origin in the sutras. It is basically a sutra practice connected with tantra. In other words, it is a practice according to the sutras that adopts and adapts the methods of the tantras, specifically some of the methods of anuttarayoga tantra. This became a tantric practice after the Buddha's time through the realization and teachings of the bodhisattvas who received it from the Buddha and the various mahasiddhas who received it from them. In that sense it is different from a primarily tantric practice like Chakrasamvara or Kalachakra, the origins of which are one or more specific tantras taught by the Buddha, belonging to a specific class of tantra such as some form of anuttarayoga and so on. And in that sense it is also unlike the various lower tantras—the yoga, carya and kriya tantras—which also go back originally to the Buddha Shakyamuni. Here it is basically a sutra practice that makes use of the methods of anuttarayoga tantra, and there is no specific tantra that is a scriptural basis for it as is the sutra.

**Question:** What about all of the detail, all of the richness of the visualization. Is that contained in the longer sutras? The palace and its various colors, etc. Is there a specific being even after the Buddha's time from whom this originates?

**Rinpoche:** Well, the palace is based upon the description in the sutra of the Medicine Buddha, which says that the Medicine Buddha's realm is called



such and such, it is like this, and it has such and such a palace, and so on. The retinue is based also upon the sutra. In the sutra all eight medicine buddhas and the sixteen bodhisattvas are mentioned as being present at the teaching, and the twelve yaksha chieftains, the ten protectors of the directions, and the four great kings are also described as being present at the teaching. By visualizing them surrounding the buddhas and bodhisattvas, you insure the receipt of their protection and blessing.

**Question:** For fear of totally beating a dead horse, you know all of the lights and the medicine buddhas raining down, are these based on other tantric practices?

**Rinpoche:** Yes.

**Question:** Rinpoche, when I go home and talk to my family and friends and say I have been at the Medicine Buddha retreat and they ask me who or what is the Medicine Buddha, I do not know what to tell them. I want to create a definition that is going to bring them benefit, and although I know that hearing about the Medicine Buddha will help them, I do not want to initially turn them away. So could you give sort of a short answer in layman's terms? I do not know if that is possible. And also, we have a new cat and I want to expose him to the Medicine Buddha, but he might not stay at the shrine with us when we are practicing. So, is it appropriate to put a picture of the Medicine Buddha near his food bowls or by his bed? Or is that not appropriate? Will simply living with dharma practitioners be helpful for an animal when he hears us just sort of talking dharma?

**Rinpoche:** To answer your first question, probably the most convenient thing to say to your family is that you were taught and practiced a form of meditation designed to lead to physical health and freedom from sickness, and leave it at that. As for putting an image of the Medicine Buddha near where your cat eats and sleeps, that is fine.

So the time is up. The rest of you could ask your questions this afternoon. I was asked a question yesterday about how to defend oneself against sexual attack or rape, and I was asked to give an answer that is in accordance with the dharma. Basically, the dharmic answer to this would be prevention as much as possible, which would basically fall into two categories. First of all, through mindfulness avoid situations where you are likely to be a victim of that kind of attack. And the second approach is to discour-

age anyone who seems to be capable of that kind of attack or behavior by being a little bit tough, so that they do not ever get the idea that they can get that close to you.

So, we will dedicate the merit.

## 6 THE CORRECT VIEW REGARDING BOTH DEITIES AND MARAS

---



WE HAVE COMPLETED THE EXPLANATION of the *Medicine Buddha Sutra*. There is another sutra connected to this, called the *Sutra of the Aspirations of the Eight Medicine Buddhas*, which refers to the principal Medicine Buddha of the *Medicine Buddha Sutra* and the other seven medicine buddhas in his retinue. These are distinct buddhas, but their aspirations are fundamentally the same, so I am not going to explain that sutra separately.

In the sutra that we have been studying there is a great deal of presentation of the idea of veneration, even worship of this deity, the Medicine Buddha, and through veneration and worship, achieving what is called cutting the noose of mara. So we have the idea of some sort of external mara that is somewhere down there and some sort of external deity that is somewhere up there. Given this type of presentation we may come to the conclusion that the deity being supplicated, such as the Medicine Buddha, has the omnipotence and the external existence of a creator, as though he or she actually causes us to experience the pleasant and unpleasant things that we undergo. It may seem that since, if you pray to the Medicine Buddha, you will somehow receive the two attainments—the common and supreme attainments—that if you do not pray to the Medicine Buddha, you will get into trouble. But the vajrayana view of the effect or effectiveness of the supplication of deities is fundamentally different from this idea. The idea in the vajrayana is that the blessing associated with the deity, the attainment you gain through this type of practice, is a result of your practice of the path.<sup>53</sup> Your accomplishment of the path leads to its result, which fundamentally is caused by your own meditative state or samadhi, cultivated by yourself within yourself. The capacity you have to cultivate such a samadhi and thereby attain these results is your own fundamental nature, which is referred to as buddha nature. This potential is something that each and

every being has. It is usually obscured by the presence of temporary stains or obscurations. These stains are removed by the practice of the path, by the practice of meditation, by the practice of the generation and completion stages. And when these obscurations have been removed and the innate qualities of this buddha nature are revealed, that is the result. So this practice is not really the worship of an external deity. It is primarily a way of gaining access to your own inherent or innate wisdom.

Because this is the view of the vajrayana with regard to the nature of deities, the uncommon method of the vajrayana is to visualize oneself as the deity. Thus, in this practice you visualize yourself as the Medicine Buddha. But in the common vehicle, the basic teachings of the buddha, [the hinayana teachings], it appears as though it is taught that the ultimate result of the path is what is called arhat without remainder. There it is taught that when someone completes the path—which means that they remove or abandon all of the causes of samsara, all karma, and all kleshas—then they naturally attain the result of that removal, which is the cessation of the results of those causes, which means the total cessation of samsaric existence for that individual. Since they have abandoned the causes and therefore experience the cessation of the results, according to the common vehicle, there is nothing whatsoever left—which is called arhat without remainder. So from the point of view of the common vehicle, one's own liberation depends entirely, without any exception whatsoever, upon one's attainment through meditation, and there is no point whatsoever in supplication or prayer to anyone or anything outside oneself, because there is simply no one to pray to.

The vajrayana view is different from that. According to the vajrayana, as according to the mahayana, there have appeared innumerable buddhas and bodhisattvas. All of them have entered the path by generating bodhicitta, have traversed [or are in the process of traversing] the path by gathering the accumulations of merit and wisdom for three periods of innumerable kalpas [according to the mahayana], and finally have completed [or will complete] the path by attaining full awakening or buddhahood. Having attained buddhahood, they actually have the capacity to grant their blessing, and it is for that reason that we make offerings, that we perform prostrations, that we supplicate, and so on. So in the vajrayana we not only visualize ourselves as the yidam, but we also visualize the yidam, such as the Medicine Buddha, in front of us as well. Focusing on the front visualiza-

tion, we make offerings and so forth in order to gather the accumulations, and we supplicate the deity and receive its blessing. So from the vajrayana point of view, there is in fact something to pray to, and doing so does facilitate one's attainment of the result.

Connected with this is one's understanding of the aim of practice. Sometimes, in the way dharma is presented, it seems as though the only acceptable goal of doing dharma practice is the attainment of perfect awakening in order to liberate others, and it seems to be said that it is utterly inappropriate to think of any benefit for this life at all, which implies there exist no methods in dharma for benefiting oneself in this life. In fact, this is not the case. Especially in the vajrayana tradition we talk about the attainment of the two siddhis or two attainments. One of them is the supreme siddhi or supreme attainment. Through the practice of meditation—through the practice of the generation and completion stages—you gradually remove the two obscurations—the mental/emotional afflictions and the cognitive obscurations—and you eventually attain buddhahood. The attainment of buddhahood is the supreme attainment. But if you think that this is the only benefit or only reason for practice, that is not entirely the case. In the vajrayana we also speak of the common siddhis or common attainments. Through meditating upon a yidam you can also attain longevity, freedom from sickness, wealth and so on, and it is because of this emphasis in vajrayana on the common attainments that there are so many different deities. For example, in order to attain wealth you would practice a wealth deity such as Jambhala. In order to attain physical well-being and freedom from sickness you might practice a deity such as the Medicine Buddha. In order to increase your insight into the meaning of the teachings you might practice Manjushri. Doing practices for these reasons is not regarded as inappropriate in any way. Since these practices exist, it is obviously not impossible to attain these things by doing them.

That is the view with regard to the deities that are meditated upon and supplicated. Then there is the other side of things, mara or the maras, which we might think of as being down there, in the same way that deities might be thought of as being up there somewhere. There are two ways in which we generally think of mara. One way is to think that mara refers to one's own mental afflictions, one's own kleshas alone, and not as any kind of external being that is trying to tempt one or interfere with one's spiritual progress. And sometimes we think that maras are completely external, and

we think that everything that goes wrong is caused by some kind of external malevolent force that is attempting to victimize us. Both of these views are somewhat extreme.

Mara is most commonly presented in the Buddhist tradition as four different types of maras, called devaputramara, the mara that is the child of the gods; kleshamara, the mara that is the mental afflictions; skandhamara, the mara that is the aggregates; and finally mrtyumara, the mara that is the lord of death. These are primarily internal. The first of these, devaputramara, the mara that is the child of the gods, refers not to some kind of external demonic force but primarily to your own great attachment and great craving. Therefore, it is given the name of child of the gods, because when this mara is depicted iconographically—because it is craving or wanting something so much—it is not depicted as something ugly and threatening, but as something attractive, because that is the feeling-tone of attachment. It is liking things so much that it interferes with your dharma practice and your attainment of awakening. The second mara, kleshamara, the mara that is mental afflictions, is your mental afflictions themselves. These become a mara because, due to the beginningless habit of maintaining and cultivating them, they keep on popping up again and again. They are very hard to abandon or even to suppress, and when they are momentarily absent, they come up again, and in that way they interfere with your practice of dharma.

The third mara is skandamara, the mara of the aggregates. The aggregates here refer to the five aggregates that make up samsaric existence—forms, sensations, perceptions, thoughts,<sup>54</sup> and consciousness. Now, these aggregates are themselves mara, because being aggregates or composite, they are impermanent. Being impermanent they are constantly changing, and therefore they are always a cause, directly or indirectly, of suffering. In order to attain permanent happiness, in order to transcend the suffering of samsara, we must transcend the five aggregates. There is simply no way to attain a state of permanent happiness within the bondage of these aggregates.

The fourth of the four maras is death itself, which is depicted iconographically as wrathful or unpleasant. Death, of course, is what we are most afraid of. Death is what comes with great agony and fear and pain.

These four maras are fundamentally internal; they are not external beings. Victory over the four maras requires the practice of dharma, the practice of meditation. Specifically, it requires the realization of the selflessness

of persons and the selflessness or emptiness of things in general. In order to realize these two aspects of selflessness or emptiness, one meditates on emptiness, and, especially according to the vajrayana tradition, one meditates upon the nature of one's own mind, since this is an evident emptiness, an obvious or directly experienceable emptiness.<sup>55</sup> Therefore, the practice of shamatha and vipashyana, tranquillity and insight meditation, that takes as its basis the recognition of the nature of one's own mind, is a direct method that leads to the realization of the emptiness of one's own nature, and on the basis of that realization, one can gradually attain the ultimate fruition, final awakening, at which point one has conquered all four maras once and for all. And that is how one conquers the mara that is internal.

Vajrayana practice therefore includes the practices of both shamatha and vipashyana. But the typical practices of the vajrayana are not limited to those practices; they also include the two broad and inclusive categories of the generation stage and the completion stage. According to the vajrayana, the four maras are considered to be impure appearances, the projections of bewilderment and the presence in one's mind of those tendencies—the kleshas and the cognitive obscurations—that cause those projections. The four maras consist of impure appearances and the reification of them, and this includes impure or negative karma as well.<sup>56</sup> The attainment of victory over the four maras according to the vajrayana tradition comes about from transcending these impure appearances and coming to experience pure appearances. One attains the experience of pure appearances by meditating upon appearances as pure, by meditating upon one's environment as a pure realm, one's body as a pure form, and so forth. Now if this were a meditation upon things as other than what they truly or fundamentally are, it would never work. But because our basic nature is buddha nature, and because the temporary obscurations that cause us to perceive things as impure are secondary to that nature—and by temporary or secondary we mean that they can be removed, that they are empty, that they are not intrinsic to the nature—because our basic or true nature is buddha nature and those obscurations that hide it are not intrinsic to it and can be removed, therefore, just as our true nature is pure, appearances are also fundamentally pure. It is in order to reveal this basic nature and reveal these pure appearances that we practice the generation stage.

Initially, generation stage practice is extremely difficult, because it goes directly against the grain or the current of our habit of impure projections,

which causes the impure appearances we experience. But eventually [with effort] the habit of regarding things as pure is cultivated to the point where one generates a clear appearance or a clear perception of things as pure. From that point onward, gradually, the actual, pure nature of phenomena or appearances begins to be revealed, and it is for that reason that we practice the generation stage meditation upon yidams. It is also in order to reveal this pure nature of appearances that we regard things not as the ordinary solid things that they appear to be—ordinary earth, ordinary stones and so on—but as the embodiment of emptiness manifesting as vivid pure appearances. In this way, through practicing the generation and completion stages, we attain the ultimate result.<sup>57</sup>

Sometimes when we are practicing, we experience adverse conditions, obstacles of various kinds—such as physical illness or mental depression, or various external setbacks in whatever we are trying to do. These come from one of two causes—from previous actions or karmas, or from present, suddenly arising conditions. Although normally we regard the maturation of our previous actions as something that, once it arises, is very difficult to change, nevertheless, if you supplicate the buddhas and bodhisattvas, make offerings, gather the accumulations, and so on, you can purify your karma. Purifying your karma also purifies some of your kleshas at the same time.<sup>58</sup> We all have kleshas for sure, but they can be defeated by the appropriate remedies, if the remedies are sincerely and consistently applied. With the application of the appropriate remedies—especially with the blessings of buddhas and bodhisattvas—one can alter one’s karma and reduce the power of one’s kleshas, [thereby eliminating or reducing one’s obstacles and adverse conditions].

The other cause of obstacles is what is called “sudden conditions.” One type of sudden condition is a karmic debt, a situation in which what is happening is not the direct result of your immediately previous actions, but is being imposed upon you by another being because of a negative karmic connection you made with that being [in a previous life]—for example, a being whom in previous lives you have beaten up, killed, or stolen from, and so on. Sometimes this is a human being who for no apparent reason takes such dislike to you that they start persecuting you. Sometimes it is a nonhuman being, a spirit with no apparent physical form, who, because of your having harmed it in a previous life, takes every opportunity to cause you obstacles in this life. These things are quite possible; they



happen to us. In such a situation, if you supplicate the Medicine Buddha, make offerings, make virtuous aspirations and so forth, this being's aggression will be pacified, and you can free yourself from the obstacle.

I am going to stop there for this afternoon. Some of you didn't get a chance to ask your questions this morning, so if you'd like to ask them now, please go ahead.

**Question:** Rinpoche, it seems as though in the West many of the teachings that have been provided to us have put a great amount of emphasis on our mental afflictions or kleshas, and there has not really been much teaching on physical afflictions, which is in a sense what we have been talking about this week, some of the ways of working with physical afflictions. I wonder if Rinpoche would comment a little bit more about the view to take—both from the relative and the absolute standpoint—when physical afflictions and physical difficulties and sicknesses occur, as well as ways of working with physical afflictions in the post-meditation experience. That is part one of the question.

**Rinpoche:** Well, of course, physical difficulties, physical suffering, and sickness are always happening in one way or another for us. These are relative truths, relative phenomena. As relative phenomena they are interdependent, which is to say, each and every aspect of these situations is in fact the coming together of many conditions that depend on one another in order to appear as what they appear to be, as for example sickness or physical pain. Therefore, because they are interdependent, because they are not true [immutable] units, there is always a remedy of one kind or another. For example, in the context of the Medicine Buddha practice, visualizing the body of the Medicine Buddha, reciting the mantra of the Medicine Buddha, requesting the blessing of the Medicine Buddha—all of which are primarily mental, primarily acts of meditation and visualization—initially pacify your mind, but by pacifying your mind, because of the interdependence of mind and body, these acts start also to pacify your physical illness. If you are ill, they will help to pacify the illness. And if you are not ill, they will help to prevent the advent of illness.

At the same time, we also make use of physical remedies, medicines, for sickness. But as we know from experience, sometimes a medicine will work and sometimes, for some reason that is not necessarily apparent, something interferes with the proper functioning of the medicine, and it does not

effectively treat even an illness for which it is appropriately prescribed. Supplication of the Medicine Buddha will help prevent that interference with or ineffectiveness of medicine, and will help the medicine take its proper effect.

**Question:** May I continue? There are here this weekend many health care practitioners and/or educators who often work with people who are not practitioners but who certainly have some quality of openness. Could Rinpoche comment a bit on how we, as medical practitioners and as educators in medical schools—as we begin to practice and study and understand the Medicine Buddha and what you have talked about—how we can apply all of this as we work with our patients and with our students in medical schools?

**Rinpoche:** Well, the most important thing to have in working with a patient and to communicate in teaching physicians is that the fundamental ground of the alleviation of sickness, which must be common to all health care practitioners, is the sincere and committed wish to help others, the sincere wish to remove suffering and at least the proximate causes of suffering. And so the four-fold unsullied and stainless attitude that was described yesterday in the sutra is very important. Freedom from aggression and the wish to benefit the patient are the most important things, and these need to be communicated and to be present.

**Question:** Rinpoche, I want to confirm my understanding that it has been okayed by Rinpoche to share the tapes from this week and the practice text that we have used with others, and that those with whom we are sharing it do not have to have taken the refuge vow. Is that correct? Because I have people waiting back in Portland and I just wanted to be absolutely sure.

**Rinpoche:** Yes.

**Question:** Thank you.

**Question:** I may just be asking Rinpoche to repeat himself, but I think I need to hear it. The first question is about faith and devotion. When we supplicate intensely, I am trying to understand better what exactly we're supplicating. What have we faith in and what do we have devotion to? Is it faith that the practice will actually work or that the deity actually exists, or a combination?

**Rinpoche:** It is both. The point is that faith and devotion bring the accomplishment of whatever you are trying to do. If you have faith, you will accomplish whatever it is, and if you do not have faith, you won't. This is simply how things work. If you have faith, then you will do it. You will do something properly, and doing it properly will cause it to work. You will achieve the result. And if you do not have that much faith in something, you will do it halfheartedly or not at all, and therefore you will not achieve the result. So having faith really means fundamentally trusting and believing in the process. With respect to the Medicine Buddha practice, it means believing first and foremost that it will work. Trusting in the process will automatically entail—and therefore produce—faith in and devotion to the deities involved, the lama who taught you the practice, and so on.

**Question:** And does devotion have to do with just the recognition of the superior qualities of whatever it is you are devoted to?

**Rinpoche:** In Tibetan, the word that gets translated as devotion is usually expressed in English in two words that have distinct meanings. The first word means enthusiasm, and of course enthusiasm is simply being really interested in something. But this specific type of enthusiasm, as is indicated by the second word, which literally means respect, is an enthusiasm founded upon, as you indicated, a recognition of the extraordinary qualities of someone or something.

**Question:** Could you talk about the relationship between purification and blessing?

**Rinpoche:** These two—purification and receiving blessings—are distinct. They are not exactly the same. Purification means that the obscurations—the cognitive obscuration, which is ignorance, and the afflictive obscurations, which are the mental afflictions and the karmic obscurations or the negative karma that you have accumulated—are gradually purified, which means removed from you. And receiving blessing means that through your supplication of the buddha or of the dharma, you receive their blessing. For example, when you supplicate the Medicine Buddha, through the power of your own supplication combined with the power of the twelve aspirations made by the Medicine Buddha, something happens, and that is called blessing. On the other hand, while purification and blessing are distinct, either one can cause the other. The removal of obscurations allows you to receive the blessings [more fully] and receiving blessings brings about the removal of obscurations.

**Question:** Thank you very much Rinpoche.

**Question:** I have two questions and one challenge. But you may escape the challenge depending on how you answer the first question. The first question is, can you explain the difference between our buddha nature and a buddha in particular with regard to the notions of omniscience and the inseparability of samsara and nirvana?

**Translator:** The question is, can you explain the difference between our buddha nature and a buddha, someone who has attained buddhahood, and particularly in regard to the issue of omniscience and the inseparability of samsara and nirvana. Is that the question or the challenge?

**Question:** That is the question. There is an adjunct actually to that. How can one be realized without consciousness? I think they are connected, those two.

**Translator:** By consciousness what do you mean?

**Question:** The aggregate that is impure that you talked about before.

**Rinpoche:** The buddha nature that is present in our nature as the ground of being is like a bird in its eggshell, a bird that has not yet emerged from the egg. And a buddha is like that bird flying in the sky, having broken out of the eggshell. We each and everyone have the innate potential that manifests as the qualities of buddhahood. But this potential, which is our essence, is hidden by our obscurations, and therefore, as long as it is hidden, we call it a seed. We use the term buddha to refer to someone in whom this previously hidden essence has become revealed. So there are basically two situations: a being whose basic nature is still hidden and a being whose basic nature has been revealed. When that basic nature is hidden, we call it a potential, a kernel or seed, an essence, or buddha nature. And when that basic nature has been revealed, then we call that being a buddha.

**Question:** You didn't answer the question about how you can be realized without consciousness.

**Translator:** Oh yes, I am sorry.

**Rinpoche:** You do not "lose consciousness" when you attain buddhahood. You transform consciousness. The function of consciousness is transformed into wisdom. In our present state, consciousness functions somewhat haphazardly and imperfectly. Sometimes our consciousnesses are so intense that they are overwhelming and sometimes they are so obscure or dim that they do not really function properly.

**Question:** This is quite quick. Is it within mara's ability to convince a person that they are a realized buddha when they are not, or that they are a lineage holder or a bodhisattva when they are not? And if it is, how does a person protect himself or herself against that illusion, particularly given that to be a realized buddha and/or lineage holder and/or a bodhisattva is what one aspires to be?

**Rinpoche:** It sounds possible.

**Question:** Well how do you protect yourself against it?

**Rinpoche:** Basically by preserving a good motivation and cultivating a lot of love and compassion.

**Question:** I'll leave my challenge for another time because there are so many people.

**Question:** Thank you, Rinpoche, and thank you, Lama, for your translations. My question is regarding sangha. Most of us do not have any trouble taking refuge in the buddha or taking refuge in the dharma, but when it comes to taking refuge in the sangha, we roll our eyes and nervously giggle. Here this whole week, we have been together as a sangha, all working cooperatively together, but when we leave here we'll go to our different cities and our different groups and get into situations where we have come from many different schools—Nyingma, Kagyu, Geluk, Sakya, and others—and many different teachers, many different ways of doing things. And what I have seen happen in Seattle is one group thinking that their way is the best, this teacher over here is said to have some shady past, some other teacher does not teach at all in Tibetan, with all their various differences, and even within individual groups, the various concepts: well, this person has taken refuge, so they are sangha, even though maybe they do not practice very often; this person practices all the time, but has not taken refuge; that person practices all the time but does not come to the center. So there are all these various ideas about what sangha is and how to behave towards sangha members, and I would like it if Rinpoche could address what sangha is, what a practitioner is, and what the correct view and behavior towards those would be.

**Rinpoche:** Our attitude towards the sangha is indicated by the definition of taking refuge in the sangha. Taking refuge in the sangha is accepting the sangha or the community as companions on the path. So the basic view you have of other practitioners is that they are fellow travelers on the same

path. That being the case, you do not particularly have to examine whether or not someone is what either you or someone else might consider a full-fledged bona fide member of the sangha. You do not need to worry about what the criteria are for making that appraisal. It does not matter whether someone is of the same particular lineage or not, whether their approach in practice is exactly the same as yours or not, whether they have taken the vow of refuge or not. They are on the same path, trying to reach the same goal. The fundamental function of the sangha is—by being on the same path and having the same goal—to encourage one another to practice dharma, to cause one another to remain involved and to become more involved in dharma and its practice, rather than to lead one another farther and farther away from the path.

**Question:** In that respect then, Rinpoche, would one expect sangha to get larger rather than to become more and more narrow?

**Translator:** As a community you mean?

Question: Yes.

**Rinpoche:** Well, it is good if it does, because the greater the number, then the greater the momentum of the practice of that specific sangha. And the greater the momentum, the more courage and the more deeply involved people tend to get.

**Question:** Thank you, Rinpoche. My question concerns care of people who are terminally ill, people who are dying of something like cancer, and the relief of pain. I have been told that it is better not to relieve pain too much because it is karma coming to fruition, that if you do not feel it now, you are going to feel it later, in the next life or whenever, which seems to me not the most compassionate view, particularly if the person who is dying in pain is not a dharma practitioner. Could you speak to that please?

**Rinpoche:** It is possible that the agony of a dying person is a result of their previous karma, but your giving them medicine that reduces that pain does not remove the working out of that karma. It affects how bad the pain is, but the karma itself is still ripening. So by alleviating the pain of a dying person, you are not dooming them to a worse fate later on. So by all means they should be given pain medication.

**Question:** Thank you.

**Question:** You have been talking a lot about impure and pure percep-

tions. I am having a hard time understanding or thinking what might constitute something that is pure in its perception. Is it bright or light? On the other hand what is an impure perception?

**Rinpoche:** It has more to do with the mind that is perceiving than it does with the actual physical characteristics of what is perceived. A simple example of this is that if the same person looks at the same thing in two different emotional states, they will see them differently. The effect of what they see will be very different. For example, if someone looks at something while they are very angry, while they are feeling really spiteful and mean, they will see it as irritating or as unpleasant, and if the same person looks at the same thing when their emotional state is one of love and compassion, something very positive, they will see the same thing as having a positive nature or quality. That basically is what is meant by impure perception or appearances and pure perception or appearances, but the difference between those two states—the same person in basically two different moods—is very slight. While that is the principle on which it operates, it can go much further than that. If you can imagine a mind that is completely pure of any kind of negativity whatsoever, what that person would experience is what we would call true, pure appearances. And a mind that is filled with various sorts of negativity experiences impure appearances.

**Question:** Thank you for the teachings, Rinpoche. I have a couple of questions. I am wondering, in the subtle level of the judging mind, when one is aware of judgments coming up—not when one is angry, but when these judgmental tendencies arise—how can one work to antidote these in the present moment?

**Rinpoche:** Are you talking about meditation or post-meditation?

**Question:** Post-meditation in interaction with others or even in simple observation in daily life.

**Rinpoche:** The first step is to recognize the tendency. If you are in the habit of recognizing these sorts of subtle judgmental thoughts as what they are, then the habit of recognizing them and not wishing to invest in them will accrue, and they will occur less and less often.

**Question:** So how is that really happening?

**Rinpoche:** If you are not interested in cultivating those thoughts and you apply mindfulness and alertness, they will automatically happen less and less and disappear.

**Question:** You mentioned the two main bodhisattvas of the Medicine Buddha, Luminous Like The Sun and Luminous Like The Moon. I was wondering if you could expand on that some.

**Rinpoche:** I think that they are other names for Manjushri and Chagdrul. Luminous Like The Sun would be Manjushri, and Luminous Like The Moon would be Chagdrul.

**Question:** You spoke a little bit about spirits and not wanting to get them angry or to offend them. I am increasing my faith in the Medicine Buddha and I am sure that its practice is great, but I wonder if you have more guidance for one who does healing work where actual spirit possession may happen, and what perhaps to do or to focus on after doing such a session?

**Translator:** Do you mean, if you are trying to heal someone who is possessed by a spirit, or if you the healer get attacked by the spirit?

**Question:** Well, both perhaps. You are working with somebody, and a spirit deposal happens, and they kind of reclaim their body. Generally what I have experienced is just staying really strong and clear, but sometimes there is fatigue or other things that may happen afterwards. So both.

**Rinpoche:** The most important thing in that situation is that the practitioner have compassion not only for the possessed person but for the possessing spirit as well. Of course, we normally have compassion for the possessed, but we may not have that much compassion for the possessor. The possessed person deserves our compassion, because they are suffering. But the possessor—equally or perhaps even more so—deserves our compassion, because they are doing what will become the cause of great suffering for themselves in the future. If you have that attitude of compassion for the spirit, it will facilitate the extrication of the spirit, and also will not leave that sort of staleness, and so forth, that will otherwise ensue.



## 7 SOMEHOW OUR BUDDHA NATURE HAS BEEN AWAKENED, AND WE ARE VERY FORTUNATE INDEED

---



ALL OF YOU ARE NO DOUBT EXTREMELY BUSY, but in spite of that, you all decided to come here, and for that, in and of itself, I thank you. Beyond that, having come here, you have all practiced and listened to the teachings with great diligence and attentiveness, and I thank you especially for that as well. As it says in the *Jewel Ornament of Liberation*, “While all sentient beings without exception possess buddha nature, this buddha nature is hidden by our obscurations,” as in the analogy I gave yesterday of a bird in an egg shell. There are different ways that buddha nature can be present in a person. While it is equally present per se in everyone, it can either emerge and be somehow awakened, or not. When buddha nature is dormant, when there is no evidence in the person’s life of the presence of it, that person has no immediate opportunity for liberation. On the other hand, when the qualities of buddha nature emerge, when it becomes awakened or aroused, then its qualities are revealed and the person can begin to attain liberation. Now in the case of all of you, your having decided to come here, your having done so, and your having practiced diligently is ample evidence of the awakening or emergence of your buddha nature, and I consider this evidence further that your practice of dharma will continue to progress until you attain liberation. So that is why I thank you for coming here and practicing.

While you have been here, you have been listening to and practicing specifically the dharma connected with the Medicine Buddha, which in the long term will be a cause of your complete liberation and in the short term a cause of physical and mental well-being. So you are extremely fortunate, because this practice is extremely beneficial. Now as you go on with your lives and attempt to integrate practice into your daily life, you will find that sometimes you will have what will seem like a more or less perfect opportunity. It will fit right into your life without any contradiction or problem,

and there will not seem to be any impediments or obstacles that interfere with your practice. And sometimes you will find that there will seem to be any number of obstacles impeding or obstructing your practice, time constraints and so forth, and it may get to the point that you feel you have no opportunity to practice, at least not as much as you would like. In such situations, do not be discouraged. Do not think, “I have obstacles, I have real problems, I am never going to be able to practice. No matter what I do, things always go wrong,” and so on. Do not allow yourself to become depressed by the temporary obstruction of your practice, and always remember that even merely encountering such dharma, even hearing it, is something that is extremely fortunate, extremely beneficial in and of itself. Whatever contact you have made and whatever practice of dharma you have done will never be lost. The benefits of it can never be destroyed or removed and will lead you sooner or later to complete liberation.

It says in the *Jewel Ornament of Liberation* that in one of the sutras the Buddha discusses the benefit of having less than complete faith. Now obviously there are some people who have intense and complete, unquestioning faith in the three jewels, and especially in the dharma, and of course that is wonderful. But there are other people who have less faith in the dharma, which is to say that they have some faith in it, but they also have some questions and doubts. The image that the Buddha uses to describe these situations is that if someone has complete faith, they are going to join both palms together in front of their heart in a gesture of utter devotion and trust. But someone with less faith might just put one hand up in front of their chest. So what the Buddha is describing is a situation in which someone has what we could call “half faith.” They have faith but they also have a lot of doubt. And the Buddha poses the question, “Is there going to be any benefit, is there going to be any result to putting one hand up in a gesture of half faith or half devotion?” And his answer is, “Yes, there will definitely be a great result; there will be great benefit, and the benefit of this will never be lost.” It will eventually lead to that being’s perfect awakening. So in that way the Buddha praises an attitude of faith even if it is what we might consider half-hearted.

A second analogy the Buddha gives begins with imagining a place of practice such as this one. Initially, in order to come here, one generates the intention to do so. So someone might think, “I need to go to such and such place and practice intensively.” Now obviously, if you actually get there and

practice, there will be great benefit, but suppose someone, having decided, “I want to go there and practice,” takes a few steps in order to get there, and after merely few steps something gets in their way, a situation comes up that prevents them from actually ever reaching the place and practicing. And the Buddha asks, “In such a situation would there be a result?” And the answer is yes, there would be a tremendous result, great benefit; even having taken a few steps towards a place of practice with the intention of practicing, even though you never get there and never practice, will ultimately still be a cause of perfect happiness. So as you go on with your lives and you go on with the process that has included listening to dharma and practicing dharma, sometimes you will find that you are free of impediments and obstacles that interfere with your practice, and other times you will find that things just get in the way of your practice. But when things get in the way, do not be too discouraged; remember that all of this is always beneficial, and that it is not an abnormal situation for sometimes there to be the freedom to practice and other times not. So never think ill of yourself when you experience impediments.

That is the way this is explained in the teachings of the Buddha, as quoted and expounded by Lord Gampopa. And if we simply think about it ourselves, we can arrive at the same conclusion. If we consider appearances, this world as we experience it, we normally experience things as being very lustrous and colorful and powerful and distracting, even seductive. And our minds are very easily pulled around, fooled, and seduced. Our minds are very naive. Especially because we have lots of thoughts about what we experience. We think that things are going to stay the same. We think that things are stable and so on. And we usually fool ourselves with all of these thoughts based on appearances. But somehow we have all generated the idea, the thought, that practicing dharma and specifically coming here and participating in this retreat would be worthwhile, that it would be important enough to make room for it in our lives. Most beings simply do not come up with this idea. Most beings would not choose to come here. The reason we did is that somehow our buddha nature has become awakened a little bit, and the blessings of buddhas and bodhisattvas have somehow entered into us and affected us. So while obstacles will arise from time to time, these are not as important as they may seem at the time. They are ultimately temporary and really unimportant. The process that has begun with the awakening of our buddha nature and our making the choices we

have already made is unstoppable. Ultimately it will lead to our liberation. So we are really very fortunate indeed. When you can, when you have the necessary conditions or resources to do so, by all means practice. And when you cannot, when things just get in the way of practice and make it impossible, then do not feel too sad, and recognize how extremely fortunate you are.



PART FOUR

---

THE TWELVE GREAT ASPIRATIONS  
OF THE MEDICINE BUDDHA



## THE TWELVE GREAT ASPIRATIONS OF THE MEDICINE BUDDHA

---



Excerpted from the Mahayana Sutra:

The Vast Attributes of the Previous Aspiration Prayers of the Noble  
Victor,  
The Deity of Medicine, Light of Lapis Lazuli

### **THE FIRST GREAT ASPIRATION**

“At a future time when I have attained unsurpassable, ultimate, and perfectly complete enlightenment, having come to full awakening, then may the light of my body make brilliant, stable, and especially radiant the realms of this universe that are numberless, immeasurable, and beyond any count. May all sentient beings be adorned with the thirty-two marks and the eighty characteristics of a great, noble being. Thus, may all sentient beings become just as I am.” So he prayed.

### **THE SECOND GREAT ASPIRATION**

“At a future time when I have attained unsurpassable, ultimate, and perfectly complete enlightenment, having come to full awakening, may my body resemble precious lapis lazuli, and be fully adorned with utter purity within and without, a radiant clarity free of stains, a great agility in all things, blazing glory and brilliance, physical symmetry, and a filigree of light rays brighter than the sun and moon. For those born within this world and for those who have gone their separate ways into the dark of the dead of night, may my light come in all directions bringing happiness and contentment. May it also bring about virtuous activity.” So he prayed.



**THE THIRD GREAT ASPIRATION**

“At a future time when I have attained unsurpassable, ultimate, and perfectly complete enlightenment, having come to full awakening, through my wisdom and immeasurable skillful means, may countless realms of sentient beings have inexhaustible wealth. May no one be deprived of anything.” So he prayed.

**THE FOURTH GREAT ASPIRATION**

“At a future time when I have attained unsurpassable, ultimate, and perfectly complete enlightenment, having come to full awakening, I will place on the path to awakening any sentient being who has entered a negative path. All those who have entered the shravaka path or the pratyekabuddha path, I will guide into the mahayana.” So he prayed.

**THE FIFTH GREAT ASPIRATION**

“At a future time when I have attained unsurpassable, ultimate, and perfectly complete enlightenment, having come to full awakening, may any sentient being near to me maintain celibacy.<sup>59</sup> Likewise, through my power, may other innumerable sentient beings beyond measure, having heard my name, hold their three vows and may their discipline not deteriorate. May those whose discipline has been corrupted, not enter into the lower realms.” So he prayed.

**THE SIXTH GREAT ASPIRATION**

“At a future time when I have attained unsurpassable, ultimate, and perfectly complete enlightenment, having come to full awakening, may any sentient being who has an inferior body, incomplete faculties, an unpleasant color, a virulent, epidemic disease, impaired limbs, a hunchback, splotchy skin, may any being who is lame, blind, deaf, insane, or struck by illness, upon hearing my name, for each one, may their faculties become whole and their limbs be made perfect.” So he prayed.

**THE SEVENTH GREAT ASPIRATION**

“At a future time when I have attained unsurpassable, ultimate, and perfectly complete enlightenment, having come to full awakening, for any sentient being whose body is riddled with the pain of various illnesses, who has no refuge nor protector, no material goods nor medicine, no throng of

relatives, and who is poor and suffering, when my name comes to their ears, may all their diseases be pacified. Until awakening, may they be free of illness and remain unharmed.” So he prayed.

#### **THE EIGHTH GREAT ASPIRATION**

“At a future time when I have attained unsurpassable, ultimate, and perfectly complete enlightenment, having come to full awakening, if some people are intensely afflicted by the faults of a negative birth, despised for having it, and wish to be free of that place of birth, may they be liberated from taking this negative birth again. Until they attain ultimate awakening, may a positive rebirth always arise for them.” So he prayed.

#### **THE NINTH GREAT ASPIRATION**

“At a future time when I have attained unsurpassable, ultimate, and perfectly complete enlightenment, having come to full awakening, I will free all sentient beings from the maras’ noose. I will establish in the correct view all those in disharmony due to various views and the problems of discord. Ultimately, I will teach them the practice of bodhisattvas.” So he prayed.

#### **THE TENTH GREAT ASPIRATION**

“At a future time when I have attained unsurpassable, ultimate, and perfectly complete enlightenment, having come to full awakening, may the power of my merit completely liberate [beings] from all harm: those who are terrorized by the fear of a ruler, who are in bondage and beaten, who have fallen into a trap, who are sentenced to death, who are under the heel of deception, who are not successful, and whose body, speech, and mind are afflicted by suffering.” So he prayed.

#### **THE ELEVENTH GREAT ASPIRATION**

“At a future time when I have attained unsurpassable, ultimate, and perfectly complete enlightenment, having come to full awakening, for those who are burning with hunger and thirst, and who commit negative actions in their continuous efforts to search for food, may I satisfy them physically with food that has [a pleasing] color, smell, and taste. Later, I will bring them to the most blissful taste of the dharma.” So he prayed.

**THE TWELFTH GREAT ASPIRATION**

“At a future time when I have attained unsurpassable, ultimate, and perfectly complete enlightenment, having come to full awakening, for those who experience suffering day and night, being naked with no clothes to wear, poor and miserable, [too] cold or hot, afflicted by flies and maggots, I will give generously whatever they can enjoy, [such as] clothes that have been dyed many colors. I will fulfill all their wishes just as they desire with a variety of precious ornaments and decorations, necklaces, incense, ointments, the sound of music, musical instruments, and hand cymbals.” So he prayed.

Manjushri, these are the twelve aspirations made by the Victor, the Tathagata, the Arhant, the Perfect Buddha, the Lapis Lazuli Light of Medicine, when he was practicing the conduct of a bodhisattva.

Translated by Michele Martin © March 2000.

## NOTES

---



1 The meditation on selflessness is traditionally divided into realizing the lack of true existence of a personal self, what we usually think of as the self, and realizing the lack of true existence of phenomena.

2 “The common tradition” is a way of referring to those teachings held in common by all traditions of Buddhism, which are the teachings on personal liberation of the hinayana or lesser vehicle.

3 The Medicine Buddha, when understood as an individual buddha who once was a sentient being, predates the Buddha Shakyamuni. Therefore, our knowledge of him is based, at least initially, on the teachings that arose spontaneously out of the supersensible cognition of the Buddha Shakyamuni.

4 Shastras are commentaries on the original teachings of the Buddha.

5 common to all traditions of Buddhism.

6 The practice of any yidam deity will result in the attainment of both the ultimate and relative siddhis. The ultimate siddhi is the stable realization of the radiant clarity or clear light nature of mind and all reality which we know as complete and perfect enlightenment or buddhahood. The relative siddhis are such qualities as loving kindness, compassion, intelligence, the wisdom of insight, spiritual power, protection and the removal of obstacles, good health, longevity, wealth, magnetism, etc. The practice of a deity yields first the relative siddhis. If we pray to Chenrezig, the first result beyond the simple development of concentration will be an increase in loving kindness and compassion in our experience. If we pray to Manjushri-Sarasvati, we will gradually experience greater perspicacity, strength of intellect, and facility with music and language. If we practice Mahakala, we will experience protection and the removal of obstacles, if we practice White Tara we will develop greater insight and longevity, if we practice Green Tara we will experience liberation from fear, the quick removal of obstacles, joy, compassion and upliftedness. If we practice Vajrayogini we will begin to develop mahamudra siddhi and increased warmth and magnetism. If one practices both the development and completion stages of any deity with sufficient devotion and application, one will

eventually attain full realization, at which point all of the siddhis of all of the yidams will be spontaneously present.

7 It is important to note that these impure perceptions and attitudes are not stable, but are constantly changing moment by moment according to changing causes and conditions. Thus, in one moment one might think quite highly of oneself and actually see oneself as attractive, intelligent, and charming, and in a subsequent moment feel quite depressed about oneself and see oneself as tiresome and dreary. These perceptions and attitudes go through myriad changes, but they are all impure in the sense that we are always seeing *projections* of ourselves, others, and the environment, and not things as they truly are.

8 Buddhism, of course, does not assert any sort of cosmological beginning, so the use of “beginning here” has the same meaning as “from beginningless time.”

9 This superimposition of impurity onto appearances is the same as referred to by Nagarjuna, in *In Praise of the Dharmadhatu*: “The phenomena that appear to the mental consciousness, the chief of them all, are conceptualized and then superimposed. When this activity is abandoned, phenomena’s lack of self-essence is known. Knowing this, meditate on the dharmadhatu.” The *swabava* mantra and the ensuing sadhana, as well as all other sadhanas and completion stage practices are methods for training the mind to abandon this activity of superimposition.

10 These syllables are to be visualized in Tibetan script.

11 The true nature, the ultimate nature

12 This color blue is generally described as deep blue, the color of an autumn sky high in the mountains.

13 Which thereby brings about the cessation of suffering.

14 Expressed variously as the nonconceptual wisdom of emptiness, the nonconceptual wisdom of clear light, radiant clarity, primordial awareness, the empty, clear, and unimpeded nature of mind, etc.

15 Unlike Amitaba’s realm of Sukhavati or Dewachen, which is thought of as being in the western direction, these buddha realms of the Medicine Buddhas are thought of as being in the eastern direction. However, it is important to understand how these directions are understood in the practice of vajrayana. All deities are thought of as facing east. If you are visualizing yourself as the Medicine Buddha or as Chenrezig or as Vajrayogini, regardless of the direction in which you would find their individual buddha realms, you are facing east. And the same is true of the deities of the front visualization, who are also thought of as facing east. Therefore, if in “real space” you happen to be facing south or north, as far as the visual-

ization is concerned, you are still facing east. You would not think that the deities resided in their buddha realms somewhere far off over your left or right shoulder. “To a yogi or yogini,” as Kalu Rinpoche once said, “all directions are east.”

16 Sanskrit, like Latin, is no longer a spoken language. Here the translator is reading the mantra in what scholars suspect was the original Sanskrit pronunciation. The mantras, as they appear in this text, are our English versions of the Tibetan versions of the original Sanskrit mantras. In this case *Vajra samaya ja ja* reads *Benza samaya dza dza*.

17 In connection with this process it is helpful to be familiar with two terms: *samayasattva* and *jnanasattva*, which could be roughly translated as “commitment being” and “primordial awareness being.” The *samayasattva* is one’s own personal visualization which one performs in order to maintain one’s commitment to one’s lama and to the practice of one’s yidam. The *jnanasattva* is sometimes thought of as the “actual” deity which is a manifestation of the clear light nature of mind or the radiant clarity of mind and reality, which for the purposes of the visualization is thought of as residing off somewhere in its own particular buddha realm. When the *jnanasattva* finally dissolves into the *samayasattva*, the *jnanasattva* and the *samayasattva* are thought to have become one and indivisible. In the *ati yana*, the *samayasattva* and the *jnanasattva* are considered from the beginning to be simultaneously present.

In *The Heart of the Buddha*, Chögyam Trungpa describes this process from a psychological perspective as it relates to the practice of Vajrayogini: “The visualization of oneself as Vajrayogini is called the *samayasattva*: the ‘sacred bondage of one’s being.’ The *samayasattva* is basically the expression of the *samayas* of body, speech, and mind. It expresses one’s commitment to the teacher and the teachings and one’s trust in one’s fundamental state of mind.

“Having visualized the *samayasattvas* of basic being, one invites what is known as *jnanasattva*. The *jnanasattva* is another level of being or experience. *Jnana* is a state of wakefulness or openness, whereas *samaya* is an experience of bondage, in being solidly grounded in one’s experience. *Jnana* literally means ‘wisdom’ or, more accurately, ‘being wise.’ One invites this state of wisdom, this level of wakefulness, into one’s own imperfect visualization, so that the visualization comes alive with a feeling of openness and humor.”

18 Vases made of precious jewels and metals.

19 When represented in a seated posture and at rest, Vairocana is white with his hands in the teaching mudra; Akshobya is blue with his left hand in the mudra of meditation and his right hand in the earth touching mudra; Ratnasambhava is yellow with his left hand in the mudra of meditation and the right hand in the mudra of generosity; Amitabha is red with both hands in the meditation mudra;

and Amogasiddhi is green with his left hand in the mudra of meditation and his right hand in the mudra of fearlessness.

20 Rinpoche discusses these and other offerings in greater detail in the next teaching.

21 Though these seven “articles of royalty” or seven “possessions” may appear as such—as articles or possessions—to an observer lost in dualistic perception who sees everything as “my and mine,” “her and hers,” “him and his,” etc., they are better understood by adhering more closely to the actual meaning of the Tibetan words used here, *död yön*. *Död* means desirable, and *yön* means quality, skill or attribute. Thus, if one understands these seven “whatevers” as seven qualities or attributes of a chakravartin’s mind—whether the chakravartin is thought of as male or female—it will be easier to understand that these “articles” or “possessions,” to the extent that they appear to be external phenomena, appear naturally and effortlessly and totally without coercion in his or her mandala or world. Without this understanding, the notion of precious queen might appear as nothing more than another aspect of an androcentric universe. This misunderstanding is further undermined by understanding them as aspects of the path, as Rinpoche explains.

22 And, by extension, for the benefit of all beings. In the view of the practice of vajrayana, which is rooted in the mahayana aspiration to attain budhahood in order to liberate all sentient beings, the mandala of the yogin or yogini’s body, speech, and mind is the entirety of animate and inanimate existence, and whatever affects the one beneficially affects the other beneficially as well. Specifically, offerings are made as an antidote to desire and attachment and the self-clinging that underlies them. As one continues to make these offerings to enlightened sources of refuge, there begins to develop the understanding and then the direct experience of the emptiness or lack of inherent existence of all that to which one has been clinging, and one’s desire and attachment and self-clinging begin to dissolve and give rise to the wisdom of discriminating awareness, to the transparent self-liberating kaleidoscopic vision of what is as the mere interdependent appearances of the clear light nature of mind, and to a palpable blessing that benefits beings. It is not in order to become a good person that one makes offerings; at root, one is already a good person. One makes offerings in order to discover the truth of reality or the truth of things, and in order to access the profound effectiveness in helping others that arises from that discovery.

23 These are usually represented as concentric squares.

24 The other five are Kshitigarbha, Sarvanivaranavishkambhi, Akashagarbha, Maitreya, and Samantabhadra.

25 See Shenpen Ösel, Vol. 3, No. 3, page 11, for an English translation, online at <http://www.shenpen-osel.org>.

26 i.e. extreme asceticism

27 This is very interesting story, for the Buddha actually accepted and then postponed this event many times, before finally accepting the challenge. For a further description of this event, see Thich Nhat Hanh's *Old Path White Clouds*.

28 Generally referred to as the eight auspicious symbols.

29 Sometimes called the endless knot or the knot of eternity.

30 The takeoff point for this description is the Buddha Shakyamuni, but it should be understood that these attributes are present in male and female buddhas alike.

31 It is important to understand that the term *prajna* includes in one term the notions of knowledge, wisdom, and primordial awareness or transcendental awareness, which is the highest form of *prajna*. Worldly knowledge—medicine, literature, business management, economics or anthropology—is one form of *prajna*. Knowledge of the teachings of the Buddha and other enlightened beings is spiritual *prajna*. Both worldly and spiritual *prajna* are based on the acquisition of information, and though they may have a great deal of practical benefit, they will not by themselves liberate one from the root causes of suffering. Only the highest form of *prajna*, *jnana*—primordial awareness, which is liberated from the superimposition on experience of perceiver and perceived—will free one from the root causes of suffering.

32 The syllable HUM standing in the center of the deity's heart in both the self and front visualization faces forward, in the same direction as the deity. The mantra garland, visualized in Tibetan, faces outward—which means that one could read it standing outside the Medicine Buddha but not from the perspective of the HUM in the heart, beginning with TAYATA directly in front of the central seed syllable HUM and arranged in a circle surrounding the seed syllable.

33 What the translator is here calling mundane deities—in fact, if we met one of them, one suspects that one would think of them as anything but mundane, just as if we met Flash Gordon or Darth Vader we would hardly regard either of them as mundane—are what are oftentimes referred to as worldly deities, which means that, although they are said to reside somewhere in the gods' realms and are said to be very powerful, they are not said to be enlightened. Buddhists recognize the relative reality of such deities, make offerings to them in order to please them, ask them politely not to bother dharma practitioners, ask for their protection, even ask them sometimes to help out with the weather, but never take refuge in them, for they themselves are not thought to be liberated from *samsara*.

34 i.e. the *jnanasattvas* and the *samayasattvas*.



35 See page 70 of the last issue of *Shenpen Ösel*, online at <http://www.shenpen-osel.org>.

36 The generation of bodhicitta is based on the altruistic wish to bring about the welfare, and ultimately the total liberation, of all sentient beings from all forms of suffering. What distinguishes bodhicitta from the ordinary compassionate aspirations to benefit others shared by all people of good will is the recognition that one cannot ultimately fulfill these aspirations until one has attained the state of mental purification and liberation of buddhahood, which is the source of all positive qualities, including the omniscience that can see, individual by individual, the causes of suffering and the causes and path of liberation from suffering. This understanding gives rise at some point to the initial generation of the aspiration to attain the state of buddhahood in order to liberate all sentient beings from suffering and to establish them all in states of happiness. This is called aspiration bodhicitta, which must be followed by what is called the bodhicitta of entering or perseverance bodhicitta, which is the training in loving-kindness, compassion, the six paramitas or transcendent perfections, etc. which lead to the attainment of buddhahood. Aspiration bodhicitta and perseverance bodhicitta are both included in the term relative bodhicitta. Absolute bodhicitta is direct insight into the ultimate nature. This state of primordial awareness *is* compassion and loving-kindness and gives rise spontaneously and without preconception to compassionate activity.

37 The supplicant is generally also sitting on his or her right heel.

38 It is sometimes said that buddhas have no desire to benefit or liberate sentient beings in the ordinary dualistic sense of an “I” helping or liberating an “other”. This is not of course to suggest that a buddha does not care, rather that the natural and spontaneous activity of the totally purified clear light nature of mind is to work spontaneously for the benefit of sentient beings without preconceived ideas, without any sort of forced effort, and without habit-forming thoughts. This activity is conditioned, however, by the aspirations the buddha makes before he or she attains buddhahood, and particularly by those aspirations that the future buddha makes after he or she enters the bodhisattva path of the mahayana. Thus the great emphasis placed on the aspirations of the Medicine Buddha made when he was a bodhisattva. The activity of a buddha is also conditioned by the merit and aspirations of sentient beings.

39 One should not, of course, prevent oneself from generating great faith in the Medicine Buddha simply because, looking at the deep blue, male, monastic form of the Medicine Buddha, one feels disinclined towards a male monastic lifestyle and feels that one would rather end up looking like Vajrayogini, White Tara, or Guru Rinpoche. The ultimate state of buddhahood involves unlimited freedom of

mind, which means that a buddha can manifest at will in whatever form he or she chooses.

40 The three poisons are the three basic mental afflictions—passion, aggression, and ignorance—represented by a cock, a snake, and a pig, from which all of samsara arises.

41 The six basic categories of samsaric existence: the hell realms, the hungry ghost realms, the animal realms, the human realms, the asura or jealous god realms, and the god realms.

42 The previous session's questions are included in *Shenpen Ösel*, Volume 4, Number 1, online at <http://www.shenpen-osei.org>.

43 See *Shenpen Ösel*, Volume 4, Number 1, page 29 and/or page 61, online at <http://www.shenpen-osei.org>.

44 See *Shenpen Ösel*, Volume 4, Number 1, page 34 and page 62, online at <http://www.shenpen-osei.org>.

45 Sometimes translated as the wisdom of all-encompassing space or the wisdom of all-pervasive space.

46 See *Shenpen Ösel*, Volume 4, Number 1, page 34 and page 62, online at <http://www.shenpen-osei.org>.

47 The repetition of the main mantra or mantras of a sadhana while performing various visualizations usually comprises the main body of any sadhana practice.

48 i.e. they can remove obstacles to having children.

49 One of the characteristics of having reached the first bodhisattva bhumi or level is that, due to the bodhisattva's understanding of emptiness and interdependence, he or she begins to have and to develop the kind of vision that enables them to understand all the various approaches to spiritual development, both Buddhist and non-Buddhist, and to understand the various methods or various sorts of spiritual technologies taught by the Buddha.

50 Worldly deities who are unenlightened and thus still bound in samsara.

51 The head of the Sakya lineage, one of the four principal lineages of vajrayana Buddhism.

52 Implicit in this answer is an understanding of what we might call the developmental aspect of karma. If one commits a negative act such as killing, and does not regret it, but in fact becomes first defensive about it and then rationalizes it, then one is likely gradually to come to rejoice in it, saying, "I was right in this case to kill, and faced with similar circumstances, I would do it again." Which leads of course to the notion that who it was that was killed deserved to be killed, which

can lead in turn to the notion that they ought to be killed, which can in turn lead to the notion that we ought to organize a movement to kill such people. This leads to the hardening of one's attitude, and leads to an increasing small-mindedness that becomes more and more attached to a mistaken notion of what one ought to do and thus to an increasing stupidity. As this kind of development becomes widespread, it leads to hatred between groups and to warfare.

On the other hand, if instantly upon killing, or at any later time along the way in the aforesaid type of development, one recognizes the error of one's ways, regrets it deeply, vows not to engage in such action again, and engages in some sort of activity to compensate for one's negative actions, this process of the development of the negative effects of a negative action is arrested. And if one continues to engage in compensatory virtuous actions, the negative karma will gradually be purified. And though it is inescapable that a result of that negative karma will ultimately have to be experienced, the way in which it ripens can be mitigated so completely it will hardly even be experienced. Thus it is said that the Buddha Shakyamuni in a previous life as a bodhisattva killed the being who later was reborn as Ananda because that being was planning to kill 500 arhats and rob them. The bodhisattva, realizing that he could not talk this person out of his planned mass murder, killed him, thus preventing the deaths of the 500 arhats, and preventing the prospective murderer from being born in a succession of hellish existences from which it would be extremely difficult to extricate himself. Of course, the bodhisattva continued to be reborn again and again as a bodhisattva, engaged in ever increasingly effective virtuous action, and continued to develop love and compassion for sentient beings until, according to tradition, he was finally reborn as the Buddha Shakyamuni. The prospective murderer was also reborn at that time and became Ananda, a devoted disciple of the Buddha and his personal attendant during much of his life. According to the Pali Canon, the Buddha once stepped on a sticker, and realized that that was the karmic consequence of having killed the man who later became Ananda. As a buddha, of course, he would not have suffered from the experience.

Here Rinpoche is implying that the young girl's prayers to God on behalf of Hitler were a form of compensatory action that may have been responsible for changing the way her own personal karma ripened to the extent that they actually protected her, while others, who may have had the very same type of karma, who did not pray or prayed too little too late, were killed in the bombing.

53 i.e., not a reward arbitrarily bestowed by a deity pleased by one's praises, promises, obedience, or other means of currying favor.

54 Usually referred to as *samskaras* or mental formations.

55 It is not difficult to establish through the use of reason the lack of true—

i.e., singular, uncompounded, permanent—existence of external physical things, but it is very difficult to “see” or experience such lack of true existence of things directly. See editor’s note, page 20, *Shenpen Ösel*, Volume 2, Number 2, online at <http://www.shenpen-osel.org>.

56 To reify is to regard something abstract as being material or concrete. This is another way of referring to the phenomenon of solidification that Chögyam Trungpa introduced into our vocabulary. To think of ourselves as being small, insignificant, fundamentally flawed beings who are fundamentally angry, needy, or dimwitted is to reify or take as real and solid and unchangeable that which is in fact merely the ever-changing ripening and exhaustion of causes and conditions. And though this karmic process exists as mere appearance, it is empty in its essential nature. The manifestations of the ripening of karma appear, but are not truly real or solid. They have no true existence, and recognizing their emptiness or lack of true existence liberates one from the suffering associated with them. If one’s recognition of the essential empty nature of the ripening of karma is profound and continuous enough, impure appearances cease, and the appearance of oneself as deity and one’s environment as buddha realm spontaneously arises. This process is jump-started and fast-forwarded through the profound methods of the generation and completion stages, as Rinpoche continues to explain.

57 In the end, the vision of everything that arises as vivid pure appearance is the generation stage, and the recognition of its emptiness is the completion stage.

58 The results of any particular action include not simply the “payback,” but also the perpetuation and reinforcement in the mind of the klesha or kleshas that existed as the motivation for the action.

59 The idea of praying to be reborn in a realm where everyone is celibate is inimical to most Westerners, indeed, probably to most people, and these people will be happy to know that celibacy does not figure in as a necessary feature in a great many of the realms of tantric deities. But the opportunity to be reborn in a realm where celibacy is the norm is important to those whose obsession with sex is so great that it always involves them in perpetual emotional conflict and mental and social degeneration. Living and practicing in such a safe environment gives them the much-needed chance to break through the cycle of emotional, physical, and social degeneration.

In addition, for individuals who have *no other aim in life* but the attainment of liberation or buddhahood, the pratimoksha vows of a monk or a nun, including the vow of celibacy, are considered the best—though not the only—foundation for the path until one has reached at least the first bodhisattva bhumi. (A commitment to moral living that includes sexual fidelity is also considered a good foundation.) Under ordinary circumstances, killing, stealing, lying, sexual intercourse,

the use of intoxicants, etc., grow out of the kleshas of passion, aggression, and ignorance, which in turn are based on the very dualistic clinging that one is seeking to undermine through one's practice. Thus these actions reinforce the kleshas and the confusion in one's mind. In addition, sexual intercourse generally leads to families, which then drastically reduce the amount of time and energy that one can devote to formal meditation, which is the backbone of the path. Under such circumstances, it is more difficult, if not impossible, for beginners on the path to develop the profound vipashyana insight—the view of emptiness—which is the path to liberation and buddhahood.

APPENDIX

---



THE MEDICINE BUDDHA SADHANA

ཨོཾ་མ་ལ་ཏཱ་ལྷ་ཤེ་ཡེ། འདི་ལ་འཛོམ་ན་སྐྱེས་སྤོང་གི་ཞལ་མང་མཐུན་དུ་གྱི་བའི་མཚོན་པ་མཚུབ་སོགས་ཅི་འདྲོར་བཤམས་པས་ཚོགས་རྫོགས།  
Namo. Maha Bekandzeya. If they are available, arrange in front of a Menla thangka as many peaceful offerings as you can, such as a mandala and so forth. In this way, the accumulations are completed.

མིང་ན་མཐུན་བསྐྱེད་ནམ་མཁམར་གཤམ་གསེང་། མཚོན་པ་ཡིད་ཀྱིས་སྐྱེལ་ཚོགས་པས་ཅི་ཡང་མི་དགོས་སོ། འདི་སྐྱེ་མེད་ལུགས་ཡིན་པས།  
If these are not available, it is enough to make mental offerings while imagining the front visualization in the sky; nothing else is needed. Since this is the anutara,

འདོན་མཁམ་གཤམ་མཚུངས་པ་དང་བྱུང་བ་དང་ཚབ་སོགས་གཤམ་གསེང་སྐྱེ་མི་དགོས། འོན་ཏེ་འདིའི་དབང་ལུང་ནི་དེས་པར་ཐོབ་དགོས་ཏེ།  
the practitioner need not refrain from meat and alcohol nor perform the rituals of purification, such as taking the blessing of pure water. It is, however, definitely necessary to receive the empowerment and reading transmission for this practice,

སྤྱི་མེད་གསང་སྐྱེགས་ལུགས་ཡིན་པའི་རྒྱུར་རོ། བདག་མཐུན་དུས་གཅིག་ལ་བསྐྱེད་པ་རྙིང་མའི་ལུགས་ཡིན་པས་སོ་སོར་མི་དགོས་སོ།  
as it belongs to the anutara tradition. Since it belongs to the nyingma tradition, the self and frontal visualizations are simultaneously generated; it is not necessary to create them separately.

རྙིང་མཐུར་བསྐྱེགས་ཡིན་པས་ཚོགས་ཏོན་ལོན་ཡིད་ཀྱིས་བསྐྱེམ་ཞིང་།  
As it is a chanted meditation of the nyingma, your mind should meditate on the meaning of the words.

༡༧། གསལ་འདེབས་ནི།

། ག་མེ་རྒྱུ་མ་རྒྱ་རྩེ་ཡེ།

The supplication:

NAMO BEKENDZE MAHA RADZAYE

། བསོད་ནམས་ཡོན་ཏན་རྒྱ་མཚོའི་གཏོར་མངའ་ལོང་།

merit qualities ocean treasury endowed

། བསམ་གྱིས་མི་ཁྱབ་ཐུགས་མཛེད་འི་བྱིན་རླབས་གྱིས།

inconceivable compassion blessing by

SÖ NAM YÖN TEN GYA TSHÖ TER NGA ZHING SAM GYI MI KHYAB THUK JEY JIN LAP KYI

You are endowed with an oceanic treasury of qualities and merit; by the blessing of your inconceivable compassion,

། བསྐྱོབ་འདོད་སྤུག་བསྐྱུག་ལ་འདུང་བ་ནི་མཛེད་པ།

beings suffering torment calm

། བྱི་རུ་འོ་དོད་པ་གསལ་ལ་འདེབས།

lapis lazuli light supplicate

DRO WAY DUK NGEL DUNG WA SHI DZE PA

BEN DUR YA YI Ö LA SOL WA DEB

You calm the suffering and torment of sentient beings.

I supplicate you, Light of Lapis lazuli.

། བྱིན་ཏུ་མེད་སྤྲུལ་གསལ་ལ་བཅིངས་པས།

very greed intense bound

། ཡི་དྲུགས་གནས་སུ་སྐྱེ་བའི་སྐྱོ་བོ་ཡིས།

hungry ghost realm born beings

SHIN TU SER NA DRAK PÖ RAB CHING PE

YI DAK NE SU KYE WAY KYE WO YI

Those bound by very intense greed

are born in the hungry ghost realm.



ཁྱིད་མཚན་ཐོས་ན་མིར་སྐྱེ་སྤྱིན་པ་དགའ།

your name hear if human born generosity delight

KHYÖ TSHEN THÖ NA MIR KYE JIN PA GA

པཌོམ་ལྷན་སྐྱབ་ལྷི་སྒྲེ་ལ་གསོལ་བ་འདེབས།

victorious medicine guru supplicate

CHOM DEN MEN GYI LA LA SOL WA DEB

If they hear your name, they're born human and take delight in generosity. I supplicate you, victorious Menla.

ཁྱུ་ལ་བྲིམས་འཚལ་དང་ལཞན་ལ་གཤེས་པའི་བཟོན་པས།

morality violate and others abuse

TSHÜL THRIM CHAL DANG ZHEN LA SHE TSÖN PE

དུལ་བར་སྐྱེ་བའི་འགོ་བའའདི་དག་གིས།

hell realm born beings these

NYAL WAR KYE WAY DRO WA DI DAK GI

Violating morality and abusing others,

beings are born in the hell realms.

ཁྱིད་མཚན་ཐོས་ན་མཐོའི་ས་སྐྱེ་བར་གསུངས།

your name hear if higher realm born said

KHYÖ TSHEN THÖ NA THO RI KYE WAR SUNG

སྐྱབ་ལྷི་རྒྱལ་པོ་དེ་ལ་གསོལ་བ་འདེབས།

medicine of king the to supplicate

MEN GYI GYEL PO DE LA SOL WA DEB

Hearing your name, they're said to be born in the higher realms. I supplicate you, King of Medicine.

ཁག་དག་དབྱེན་དང་ཕྱུ་མ་དུ་མཁྱེས།

whoever dissension slander repeated by

GANG DAK YEN DANG THRA MA DU MA YI

Whoever by repeated dissension and slander

ཁྱེད་མཚན་ཐོས་ན་དེ་དག་འཚེ་མི་རུས།

your name hear if they harm cannot

KHYÖ TSHEN THÖ NA DE DAK TSHE MI NÜ

Hearing your name, they cannot harm others.

མཚན་ལེགས་གསེར་བཟང་གི་མེད་སྣང་བ་དང་།

name excellent gold fine stain not appearance and

TSHEN LEK SER ZANG DRI ME NANG WA DANG NYA DANG NYA NGEN ME CHOK PEL DANG CHÖ DRAK YANG

Excellent Name, Fine Gold, Appearance of the Stainless, Glorious Supreme One Free of Misery,  
Resounding Dharma Melody,

རབ་ཏུ་འབྱེད་ཅིང་ལུས་སྲོག་སྤེལ་བ་དག།

serious schism and life take

RAB TU JE CHING LÜ SOK THRAL WA DAK

creates serious schisms and takes life,

སྨོན་ལྱི་རྒྱལ་པོ་དེ་ལ་གསོལ་བ་འདེབས།

medicine of king the to supplicate

MEN GYI GYEL PO DE LA SOL WA DEB

I supplicate you, King of Medicine

ལྷུ་རྒྱུ་མེད་མཚན་གྲགས་པ་ལ་དང་ཚོས་བསྐྱེགས་དབྱེད་ས།

miserly not supreme glorious & Dharma resound melody

མཛོན་མཁུན་རྒྱལ་པོ་སྐྱེད་བྱུངས་རྒྱལ་པོ་དང་།

direct knowledge king melody king and

NGÖN KHYEN GYEL PO DRA YANG GYEL PO DANG SHAKYAY GYEL PO NAM LA SOL WA DEB

King of Direct Knowledge, King of Melody,

and King of Shakyas, I supplicate you all.

འཇམ་དཔལ་སྐུབས་གྲོལ་ཕྱག་ན་རྗེ་ཇེ་འཛོན།

Manjushri Kyapdroi Vajrapani

JAM PEL KHYAB DRÖL CHAK NA DOR JE DZIN TSHANG V'ANG GYA JIN CHOK ZHI GYEL PO ZHI

Manjushri, Kyabdröl, Vajrapani,

Brahma, Indra, the Four Kings of the Four Directions

ཁ་ཤོད་རྒྱུན་སྡེ་དཔོན་ཚེན་པོ་བརྒྱ་གཉིས་སོགས།

Yaksha chief great twelve and so forth

NÖ JIN DE PÖN CHEN PO CHU NYI SOK

The twelve great Yaksha chiefs, and so forth,

ལྷ་ཡུའི་རྒྱལ་པོ་རྣམས་ལ་གསོལ་བ་འདེབས།

Shakya king all to supplicate

ཁོངས་དབང་བརྒྱུན་རྒྱལ་ས་བཞིའི་རྒྱལ་པོ་བཞི།

Brahma, Indra direction four king four

དཀྱིལ་འཁོར་ཡོངས་སུ་རྒྱུགས་ལ་གསོལ་བ་འདེབས།

mandala entire perfect to supplicate

KYIL KHOR YONG SU DZOK LA SOL WA DEB

I supplicate you, entire and perfect mandala.

དེ་བཞིན་གཤམས་པ་བརྒྱ་གྲུབ་ལྷོ་ལམ་མདོ།

Tathāgata seven of aspiration sūtra

DE ZHIN SHEK PA DÜN GYI MÖN LAM DO

The Sutra of the Seven Tathagatas' Aspirations,

མཉམ་ཆེན་ཞི་བ་ཆོས་མཛད་གཞུང་ལ་སོགས།

abbot great Shantarakshita compose treatise etc.

KHEN CHEN ZHI WA TSHÖ DZE ZHUNG LA SOK DAM CHÖ LEK WAM TSHOK LA SOL WA DEB

The treatise by the great abbot Shantarakshita, and so forth, I supplicate all the volumes of the genuine Dharma,

འཛིན་པ་བློ་སྤོང་ལྷུ་བཅན་སོགས།

bodhisattva Trisong Deutsen etc.

BO DHI SA TO THRI SONG DEU TSEN SOK

Bodhisattva Shantarakshita, Trisong Deutsen, and others, translators, scholars, kings, ministers, bodhisattvas,

ལྷོ་ལམ་ལོ་རྒྱུད་དང་གླིང་དང་གླིང་།

medicine of deity of sūtra and

MEN GYI LHA YI DO DE NYI DANG NI

and the Sutra of the Medicine Buddha,

དམ་ཆོས་སྒྲིག་པ་བཅའ་ཚལ་ལ་གསོལ་བ་འདེབས།

genuine Dharma volume pl to supplicate

འོ་པན་རྒྱལ་སྐོན་བྱུང་རྒྱལ་སེམས་དཔའ་དང་།

translator, scholar, king, minister, bodhisattva, and

LO PEN GYEL LÖN JANG CHUP SEM PA DANG

འབྱུང་པའི་སྐུ་ལ་དམ་པ་ཐམས་ཅད་དང་།  
lineage of lama genuine all and

GYÜ PAY LA MA DAM PA THAM CHE DANG

And all genuine lamas of the lineage,

དེ་ལྟར་གསོལ་བ་བྲལ་པའི་བྱིན་ལྷན་བས་ཀྱིས།  
thus supplicate of blessing through

DE TAR SOL WA TAB PAY JIN LAP KYI

Through the blessing of this supplication, may the diverse temporal diseases and dangers of this life be  
stilled.

འཚི་ཚོ་དཀ་སོང་འཇིགས་པ་ཀུན་ཞི་ནས།  
death time lower realm fear all calm after

CHI TSE NGEN SONG JIK PA KÜN ZHI NE

At death, may all fear of the lower realms be calmed. Grant your blessing that afterwards we are born in  
Sukhavati.

ཁོས་ཀྱི་དབང་ལྷུག་སོགས་ལ་གསོལ་བ་འདེབས།  
Dharma of powerful etc. to supplicate

CHÖ KYI WANG CHUK SOK LA SOL WA DEB

Powerful One of the Dharma, and others, I supplicate you.

ཁགས་རྒྱབས་ནད་དང་འཇིགས་པ་སྣ་ཚོ་གས་ལི།  
diverse disease fear/danger various calm

NE KAP NE DANG JIK PA NA TSHOK ZHI

འབད་བཅན་དུ་སྐྱེ་བར་བྱིན་གྱིས་སློབས།  
Sukhavati in born grant blessing

DE WA CHEN DU KYE WAR JIN GYI LOP

ནམ་མཚོ། དགོན་མཚོ་གཤམ་ལ་དང་ཅུ་བ་གསུམ་མཚོ།

homage rare supreme three and root three

NAMO KÖN CHOK SUM DANG TSA WA SUM

To the sources of refuge, the three jewels

འབྲོ་གུ་ན་མང་རྒྱལ་ལ་འགོ་དུ་མཚོ།

beings all buddhahood in establish in order to

DRO KÜN SANG GYE LA GÖ CHIR

To establish all beings in buddhahood,

ཀ་དཀ་ལྷོ་དང་ནམ་སྤྱི་ལ་པ་ཡི་མཚོ།

primordial purity from expanse emanation

KA DAK LONG NE TRÜL PA YI

From the expanse of primordial purity come forth

སྤྱི་བའ་གནས་ཀྱི་མས་ལ་སྤྱི་བའ་སུ་མཚོ།

refuge source all to refuge go for

KYAB NE NAM LA KYAB SU CHI

and the three roots, I go for refuge.

བྱང་ལུ་མཚོ་གུ་ལུ་མས་ལ་བསྐྱེད་དོ།

awakening supreme mind generate

JANG CHUB CHOK TU SEM KYE DO

I awaken a mind of supreme enlightenment.

གནས་ལ་གང་བའི་མཚོ་དང་པའི་སྤྱི་མཚོ།

sky earth fill offering cloud

NAM SA GANG WAY CHÖ PAY TRIN

clouds of offerings filling the earth and sky

མཚལ་རྒྱལ་སྲིད་རྣམས་བཅས།

mandala royalty articles goddesses

MEN DEL GYEL SI LHA MOR CHE

With mandalas, articles of royalty, and goddesses.

འགྲོ་ཀུན་བདེ་ལྡན་སྤྱད་བསྐྱེད་བསྐྱེད།

beings all happy have suffering free

DRO KÜN DE DEN DUK NGEL DREL

May all beings be happy and free of suffering. May their happiness not diminish. May they abide in equanimity.

ཨོཾ་སྐུ་ལྷ་མ་གྲོ་མཐོ་མཐོ་སྐུ་ལྷ་མ་གྲོ་མོ།

OM SOBHAWA SHUDDHA SARWA DHARMA SOBHAWA SHUDDHO HAM

བདེ་མེད་ལྷུང་ཅིག་པུད་ཅེ་ཙོ།

inexhaustible may pud dza ho

ZE ME GYUR CHIK PUD DZA HO

May they never be exhausted. PUD DZA HO.

བདེ་ལས་ཉམས་མེད་བཏང་སྟོམས་ཤོག།

happiness diminish not equanimity be

DE LE NYAM ME TANG NYOM SHOK

May their happiness not diminish. May they abide in equanimity.

སྤོང་པ་ཉིད་དུ་གྱུར་ཅིང་།

emptiness become

TONG PA NYI DU GYUR

Everything turns into emptiness.

ལྷ་ཁྱེད་ཀྱི་ལོ་ལྷན་དུ་གྱུར་པའི་ནང་དུ་།

exquisite of palace become within

TA NA DUK GYI PHO DRANG DU GYUR PAY NANG DU SENG GEY THRI PE DA SO SÖ TENG DU

The Exquisite Palace, where

རང་ཉིད་དང་མངུན་བསྐྱེད་ལྱི་གཙུག་པོའི་ས་པོན་རྩྭ་མཐིང་ཁལ་ལས་།

self and front visualize of principal seed hung deep blue from

RANG NYI DANG DÜN KYE KYI TSO WÖ SA BÖN HUNG THING KHA LE

Appear deep blue HUNG's, the seed syllable of myself and the main figure visualized in the front,

སྤོང་པའི་ངང་ལས་སྤོང་གསུམ་འདྲི་

emptiness depth from 1000 three these

TONG PAY NGANG LE TONG SUM DI

From the depth of emptiness, this triple universe becomes

སེང་གའི་བྲི་པད་ལྗང་ས་སའི་སྤོང་དུ་།

lion of throne moon each top on

on lion thrones, each with a lotus and moon disk on top



སྤྲུལ་སྤྲུལ་མདོག་བེད་ཅུ་ལྷ་བྱ་བའི་དེར་འཕྲོ་བའི་སྐྱེ་ཅན་ཅེ།

medicine guru kaya color lapis lazuli like light rays radiate body have

MEN LA KU DOK BE DUR YA TA BU Ö ZER THRO WAY KU CHEN

From which arises Menla, his body the color of lapis lazuli and radiating light.

ཆོས་གོས་གསུམ་གྱིས་བསྐབས་པེ།

Dharma robe three by clothed

CHÖ GÖ SUM GI LUP PA

He is clothed in the three Dharma robes. His right hand in the mudra of supreme generosity holds an arura.

ཕྱག་པམས་མཚོག་སྤྱིན་ཨ་རུ་ར་དང་།

hand right supreme generosity arura and

CHAK YE CHOK JIN A RU RA DANG

གཡོན་མཉམ་བཞག་ལྷུང་བཟེད་འཛིན་པེ།

left meditation begging bowl hold

YÖN NYAM ZHAG LHUNG ZE DZIN PA TSEN PE DZOK SHING DOR JE KYIL TRUNG GI ZHUK PA

His left hand in meditation mudra holds a begging bowl. With the major and minor marks complete, he sits in the vajra posture.

མཚོན་དཔེ་རྫོགས་ཤིང་རྫོང་སྤྱིལ་གྱུང་གིས་བཞུགས་པེ།

major minor mark complete vajra posture seated

ལྷན་པར་དུ་མཛད་པའི་བུ་ལྷོ་དེ་ལྷོ་འདབ་མ་རྣམས་ལེེ།

particular in front visualization of petal. pl. on

ཐུབ་དབང་ལམ་སྐོག་པའི་སངས་རྒྱལ་བདུན་

Shakyamuni etc. buddhas seven

KHYE PAR DU DÜN KYE KYI DAB MA NAM LA THUB WANG LA SOK PAY SANG GYE DÜN

In particular, on the lotus petals of the front visualization are the seven Buddhas, Shakyamuni and the others,

དང་ཚེས་པུ་སྟེ།

and Dharma text

དེ་རྒྱུས་སེམས་དཔའ་བཅུ་དྲུག་།

around (lit., behind) bodhisattva 16

དེ་རྒྱུས་འཛིག་ཉེན་རྒྱུང་བ་བཅུ་དང་།

around (lit., behind) worldly protector 10 and

DANG CHÖ PU TI DE GYAB SEM PA CHU DRUK DE GYAB JIK TEN KYONG WA CHU DANG

and Dharma texts. Around them are the sixteen bodhisattvas, around them are the ten protectors of the world,

སྡེ་དཔོན་ཆེན་པོ་བཅུ་གཉིས་སོ་སོའི་འཁོར་དང་བཅས་པའུམ།

chief twelve respective of retinue along with

སྡེ་བཞི་ལ་རྒྱལ་པོ་ཆེན་པོ་བཞི་

gate four at king great four

DE PÖN CHEN PO CHU NYI SO SÖ KHOR DANG CHE PA GO ZHI LA GYEL PO CHEN PO ZHI

And the twelve great chiefs with their respective retinues. The Four Great Kings are at the four gates.

དང་བཅས་པའིུམ། གནས་གསུམ་ཡི་གོ་གསུམ་དང་ཐུགས་ཀའི་རྩྭ་ལས་འོད་འཕྲོས་པསུམ།

with place three letter three and heart of Hung from light radiates thereby

གང་ཕྱོགས་ཀྱི་

east direction of

DANG CHE PAY NE SUM YI GE SUM DANG THUK KAY HUNG LE Ö ZER THRÖ PE SHAR CHOK KYI

From the three syllables in their three places and the HUNG in their hearts, lights radiate, invoking from their own eastern

སངས་རྒྱལ་སོ་སོའི་ཞིང་ཁམས་ནསུམ།

buddha particular pure realm from

ཡེ་ཤེས་པ་དཔག་ཏུ་མེད་པ་སྤྱོད་དང་སུ་མ་བདག་མཚན་རྣམས་ལ་བེམ་པར་གྱུརུམ།

wisdom deity countless invite having self front pl into dissolve

SANG GYE SO SÖ ZHING KHAM NE YE SHE PA PAK TU ME PA CHEN DRANG NE DAK DÜN  
NAM LA THIM PAR GYUR

Buddha realms, countless wisdom deities which dissolve into myself and the one visualized in front.

ཧུང་གྲུབ་མཚན་བརྒྱུད་ལྷ་ཚོགས་ལ་ལུས་རྩམས།  
Hung Medicine Guru companion 8 all without exception

གནས་འདིར་རྒྱུན་འདྲེན་ཅིན་ཚེན་དབབ་དུགསོལ།  
place this to invite blessing great rain please

HUNG MEN LA CHE GYE LHA TSOK MA LÜ NAM NE DIR CHEN DREN JIN CHEN WAB TU SOL

HUNG The eight Menla companions and all deities without exception I invite here to this place.

Kindly rain upon us your great blessings.

སྐལ་ལྷན་དད་ལྷན་བདག་ལ་དབང་མཚོག་བསྐྱར།  
worthy faithful one to empowerment supreme bestow

ལོག་འདྲེན་ཚེ་ཡི་བར་ཚད་བསལ་དུགསོལ།  
false guide life of obstacle dispel request

KAL DEN DE DEN DAK LA WANG CHOK KUR

LOK DREN TSHE YI BAR CHE SEL DU SOL

Bestow the supreme empowerment on those who are worthy and faithful.

Dispel false guides and obstacles to long life.

ཀ་མོ་མཐུ་རྒྱུ་རྩེ་སའི་ལྷ་རྩེ་བའྲ་སམ་ཡེང་ཇོ།  
NAMO MAHA BEKENDZE SAPARWARA BENZA SAMADZA DZA



རྩུབ་ བཤམ་ བཀྲེ་ ར་སམ་ གཞེ་ སའི་རྩུ་རྩུ་

RUPA SHABDA GENDHE RASA SAPARSHE TRAITTISA HUNG

རྩུ་རྩུ་ བསྐྱེ་ལོ་ལྷ་ལ་བཀྲེ་དེ་ལོ་

HUNG auspicious major substances 8

HUNG TRA SHI TSO WO DZE GYE DE

HUNG The eight foremost auspicious substances,

གོ་མཚོ་ག་རྩུ་པོ་ཡུང་ས་དཀར་སོགས་ལོ་

foremost supreme royal mustard seed white etc.

TSO CHOK GYEL PO YUNG KAR SOK

HUNG the best royal white mustard seed, and the others,

བདག་གིས་སྤུལ་མཚོད་པ་འབུལ་ལོ་

I deity to offer

DAK GI LHA LA CHÖ PA BUL

I offer to the deity.

ཚོགས་གཉིས་ཡོང་ས་སུ་རྩེ་གསལ་པར་ཤོག་ལོ་

accumulations two perfect may

TSHOK NYI YONG SU DZOK PAR SHOK

May the two accumulations be perfected.

མངལ་འཁྲུ་སེའི་སྐྱེ་བུ་

MANGALAM ARTHA SIDDHI HUNG

སྐྱེ་བུ་བཤམ་གཅིག་ལྟ་བུ་འབྲུག་དེ་

HUNG auspicious foremost symbols & the

HUNG TRA SHI TSO WO TAK GYE DE

HUNG The eight foremost auspicious symbols,

བདག་གིས་ལྷ་ལ་མཚན་པ་འབྲུག་པུ་

I deity to offer

DAK GI LHA LA CHÖ PA BUL

I offer to the deity.

མངལ་འཁྲུ་སྐྱེ་བུ་

MANGALAM KUMBHA HUNG

གཏོ་མཚོ་གཞུ་པོ་བླ་མ་པ་སོགས་མེད་

foremost supreme royal vase etc.

TSO CHOK GYEL PO BUM PA SOK

the peerless royal vase and all others,

སེམ་ཅན་འབྲུག་གི་སྐྱེ་བུ་འབྲུག་པུ་

sentient beings accumulations 2 perfect may

SEM CHEN TSOK NYI DZOK PAR SHOK

May sentient beings perfect the two accumulations.

ལྷོ་ལྷོ་ལོན་ལོན་གཙོ་བོ་རྒྱ་ཆེན་བཟུང་།

HUNG desirable qualities foremost precious 7

HUNG DÖ YÖN TSO WO RIN CHEN DÜN

HUNG The foremost desirable qualities, the seven precious articles, the most excellent royal one, the jewel, and the others,

གཙོ་མཆོག་རྒྱ་ལ་པོ་ནོར་བུ་སོགས་།

foremost supreme royal jewel etc.

TSO CHOK GYEL PO NOR BU SOK

བདག་གིས་ལྷ་ལ་མཆོད་པ་འབུལ་།

I deity to offer

DAK GI LHA LA CHÖ PA BUL

I offer to the deity.

བདག་གི་ཆོག་ས་གཉིས་རྫོགས་པར་ཤོག་།

I accumulations two perfect may

DAK NI TSHOK NYI DZOK PAR SHOK

May I perfect the two accumulations.

ཨོཾ་མ་ཎི་འུ་རྩེ་།

OM MANI RATNA HUNG



ཧྲུང་གླིང་གི་འོ་པ་རི་རའ་ལིང་།

HUNG all of foremost Mt. Meru

HUNG KÜN GYI TSO WO RI RAB LING

HUNG The foremost of all, Mount Meru

བདག་གིས་ལྷ་ལ་མཚན་པ་འབུལ་།

I deity offer

DAK GI LHA LA CHÖ PA BUL

I offer to the deity.

ཨོ་རྩུ་མཚན་པ་ཧྲུང་།

OM RATNA MANDALA HUNG

རི་རའ་ལིང་གི་སྤོང་ལྷོ་བཙམ་།

Mt. Meru continent 4 subcontinent with

RI RAB LING ZHI LING TREN CHE

with its four continents and subcontinents

ཚོགས་གཉིས་ཡོངས་སུ་རྒྱ་གསལ་པར་ཤོག་།

accumulation two perfect may

TSHOK NYI YONG SU DZOK PAR SHOK

May the two accumulations be perfected.

འུ་རྩི་བདག་གི་སའི་ལྷན་ངོ་ཆ་བསྐྱེས་མེད།

HUNG I scented scent water with

HUNG DAK GI DRI DEN DRI CHAB KYI

HUNG. With scented water

ལྷ་ལ་ངོ་མ་མི་མངའ་ཡང་།

deity stain without although

LHA LA DRI MA MI NGA YANG

Although the deity is flawless,

this creates the auspicious connection for purifying all wrongs and obscurations.

ཨོ་སའ་ཏ་རྒྱ་པ་ཏ་ཨ་ལྷི་ཤི་ཀ་ཏི་ས་མ་ཡ་བློ་ཡི་རྩྱུ་ལྷོ་།

OM SARWA TATHAGATA ABIKEKATE SAMAYA SHRIYE HUNG

བདག་ཤེཀ་ཀུ་ལ་ལྷུ་ལ་སྐྱུ་བུ་སྐྱུ་པ་གསོ་ལེ་མེད།

Sugata body bathe offer

DE SHEK KU LA KU KHRÜ SOL

I bathe the sugata's body.

སྐྱི་ག་སྐྱི་བ་དག་པའི་རྟེན་འབྲེལ་བ་མེད།

wrongs obscurations auspicious connection create

DIK DRIB DAK PAY TEN DREL GYI

ལྷོ་སྤོ་རྩམ་དཀར་འཛམ་གྱི་ལྷན་པ་ཡིས།

HUNG cloth white soft scented with

HUNG RE KAR JAM DRI DEN PA YI

HUNG With a scented, soft white cloth

སྐྱ་ལ་གྱི་མ་མི་མངའ་ཡང་།

h. body stain not have although

KU LA DRI MA MI NGA YANG

Though your body is flawless,

ཨོ་ཀླ་ཡ་བེ་བུ་རྒྱ་ལོ་རྩེ།

OM KAYA BISHODHANI HUNG

ཐུལ་བའི་སྐྱལ་ཉིད་ལྱི་བར་བཞི།

victor of h. body dry do

GYEL WAY KU NYI CHI WAR GYI

I dry the victor's body.

སྐྱག་བསྐྱམ་བྲལ་བའི་རྩོན་འབྲེལ་བཞི།

suffering freedom of auspicious connection create

DUK NGEL DREL WAY TEN DREL GYI

this creates the auspicious connection for freedom from suffering.

ཧཱུྃ ཀ་བཟའ་མཛོས་ལྷན་ཏུ་རྒྱུ་འདི།

HUNG robes beautiful saffron

HUNG NA ZA DZE DEN NGUR MIK DI

HUNG With these beautiful saffron robes

སྐྱལ་བསེལ་བསྐྱེམ་འཕང་།

h. body cold free from although

KU LA SIL WA MI NGA YANG

Although your body is never cold,

ཨོཾ་བཙུན་ལམ་མུ་མུ་ཧཱུྃ།

OM BENZA WAYTRA AH HUNG

རྒྱལ་བའི་སྐྱལ་བསེལ་བར་བསྐྱེ།

victor of h. body clothe

GYEL WAY KU LA SOL WAR GYI

I clothe the victor's body.

བརྒྱལ་མངའ་སེལ་བའི་རྟེན་འབྲེལ་བསྐྱེ།

radiance/vitality flourish auspicious connection create

TRAK DANG PHEL WAY TEN DREL GYI

this creates the auspicious connection for vitality to flourish.

ཧཱུྃ ལྷོ་མ་དག་གི་ཀློང་ཡི་རི་བོ་འདྲེ།

HUNG h. body color lapis lazuli of mountain like

HUNG KU DOK BE DUR YA YI RI WO DRA

HUNG Your body is like a mountain, the color of lapis lazuli. You dispel the suffering of illness in sentient beings.

འགྲོ་བ་སེམས་ཅན་ནད་གྱི་སྐྱུག་བསྐྱེལ་སེལ།

sentient beings illness suffering dispel

DRO WA SEM CHEN NE KYI DUK NGEL SEL

བྱང་ལྷུབ་སེམས་དངའ་བརྒྱུད་གྱི་འཁོར་གྱིས་བསྐོར།

bodhisattva eight of retinue by surround

JANG CHUB SEM PA GYE KYI KHOR GYI KHOR RIN CHEN MEN DZIN LHA LA CHAK TSHAL TÖ

Surrounded by a retinue of eight bodhisattvas, Holder of Medicine, precious deity, I praise and prostrate to you.

རིན་ཅེན་སྐྱོན་འཛིན་སྐྱེལ་ཕྱག་འཚལ་བསྐོར།

precious medicine holder deity to prostrate praise

མཚན་ལེགས་རིན་ལྷན་གསེར་བཟང་ལྷུང་ན་མེད།

name excellent precious noon gold fine misery free

ཚོས་བསྐྱུགས་རྒྱ་མཚོ་ཚོས་སྤོ་ལྷན་ལུབ།

Dharma resound ocean Dharma mind Shakyamuni

TSHEN LEK RIN DA SER ZANG NYA NGEN ME CHÖ DRAK GYA TSHO CHÖ LO SHA KYA THUB

Excellent Name, Precious Moon, Fine Gold, Free of Misery,

Resounding Dharma Ocean, Dharma  
Mind, Shakyamuni,

དཔའི་ཚོས་དང་སེམས་དཔའ་བཅུ་དྲུག་སྟོགས།

genuine Dharma and bodhisattva 16 etc.

དཀོན་མཆོག་རིན་ཚེན་གསུམ་ལ་ཡུག་འཚལ་བསྟོད།

rare supreme precious three to prostrate praise

DAM PAY CHÖ DANG SEM PA CHU DRUK SOK KÖN CHOK RIN CHEN SUM LA CHAK TSHAL TÖ

The genuine Dharma, the sixteen bodhisattvas and others, to the precious Three Jewels, I offer praise  
and prostrate.

ཚངས་དང་བརྒྱ་ལྷན་རྒྱལ་ཚོན་ལྷན་སྤོང་བཅུ།

Bhrama and Indra king great direction protect ten

གོང་དཀྱིལ་ལྷེ་དཔོན་བཅུ་གཉིས་གཡོག་དང་བཅས།

yaksha chief twelve assistant with

TSHANG DANG GYA JIN GYEL CHEN CHOK KYONG CHU NÖ JIN DE PÖN CHU NYI YOK DANG CHE

To Brahma, Indra, the Great Kings, the Protectors of the Ten Directions, the twelve yaksha chiefs and all  
their assistants,

ལྷ་མི་སྐོན་གྱི་རིག་འཛོན་ངང་སྲོང་ཚོགས་ཀྱང་།

god human medicine of vidyadhara rishi with

བདུད་ཅི་སྐོན་གྱི་ལྷ་ལ་ཕྱག་འཚེལ་བསྟོད་ཅེ།

amrita medicine deity to prostration praise

LHA MIN MEN GYI RIK DZIN DRANG SONG TSHOK DÜ TSI MEN GYI LHA LA CHAK TSAL TÖ

Vidyadharas and rishis of medicine, divine and human, to the deities of ambrosial medicine, I offer praise and prostrate.

བདག་མཚུན་ཕྱག་ཀའི་རྩྭ་ལ་སྲུག་ས་ཤིང་བསྐོར་བར་དམིགས་པ།

self front heart HUNG mantra garland surround visualize

DAK DÜN THUK KAY HUNG LA NGAK TRENG KOR WAR MIG LA

The HUNG in the heart of the self and front visualizations is surrounded by the mantra garland.

འོད་ཟེར་ཁདོག་སྐྱེའོག་ལ་འཕྲོག་ས་ཤི་རྩྭ་སྐྱང་བའི་ཞིང་ཁམས་ནས་སྐོན་གྱི་མཚོང་པས་ཕྱག་ས་རྒྱུད་བསྐྱེལ་ནས། དེ་ལས་སྐོན་གྱི།

Through radiating many-colored light rays, offerings are made to Menla in the pure realm appearing in the East as the color of lapis lazuli. These lights invoke his mind stream, whence Menla's

སྐྱེའོག་རྒྱུད་ལས་ཕྱག་ས་ཤིང་ཕྱག་ས་མཚོན་ཨ་རུ་ར་ལྟར་བཟེང་བདུད་ཅི་བཀའ་བཟང་ལྟར་བབས་ནས་རང་དང་མཚུན་སྐྱིད་ལ་ཐིམ་པར་གུར།

bodies, large and small, his speech as the mantra garland, and his mind as the hand symbols of the arura and the begging bowl filled with amrita, all falling like rain, dissolve into myself and the front visualization.





གཤམ་པ་གསལ་ཞིང་།

The prayer to return back and the dissolution:

རང་གི་རྒྱུ་བཞུགས་པའི་གསལ་བའི་མཚན་ལས་།

worldly ones own place BENZA MU

JIK TEN PA NAM RANG NE BENZA MU

The worldly ones return to their own places. BENZA MU. The jnana and samaya sattvas dissolve into me,

ཡི་ཤེས་དམ་ཚིག་ལྷ་མཚན་བདག་ལ་སྦྱོར་།

jnana samaya deity pl. self in dissolve

YE SHE DAM TSHIK LHA NAM DAK LA THIM

ཀ་དཀ་ཀུན་བཟང་གོང་དུ་ཡི་མ་རྟོ།

primordial purity all-good expanse in E MA HO

KA DAK KÜN ZANG LONG DU E MA HO

and I dissolve into the expanse of all goodness, primordial purity. E MA HO.

ཞེས་པ་དགོངས་གསལ་ལྟར་གྱི་མཚན་ལས་སྤོངས་པའི་འགལ་བའི་མཚན་ལྷ་ལ་བཞགས་ཤིང་།

This ornament that is a mind treasure was compiled from the Sky-Dharma and arranged by Raga Asya. If there are contradictions, I confess them before the deity.

དགོངས་སེམས་ཅན་ཐམས་ཅད་ནད་ལས་ཐར་ནས་མུར་དུ་སྐྱེན་གྱི་གོ་འཕང་ཐབ་པར་གྱུར་ཅི་གཤམ་དེ་ཚེ་གཤམ་ལ་ཁྲུས་གསལ་སྤྲོད་པ་ཡོད་ཀྱང་།  
Through this virtue, may all sentient beings, once freed from sickness, swiftly attain the level of Menla. Though the sutra rituals have the practice of washing [which is absent here],

དེ་ལས་མཐོ་བའི་རྣམ་འབྱོར་གྱི་དམ་འཇུག་ཏུ་ཡོད་པས་མི་འགལ་ལོ། དེ་ལ་ཚེ་གཤམ་འདི་ལ་ཐུགས་དམ་བྱས་ན་ཕན་ཡོན་གྱི་བཟོན་པ་ཡིན་ན་  
as this is a higher practice, found at the end of the [supreme] yoga tantra, there is no contradiction. If you take this as your regular practice, the benefits are the following. If you are ordained,

རྩལ་བྱིམས་མི་ཉམས་གཤིང་། གཤམ་ཏེ་ཉམས་པ་ཞིག་ཡིན་ཀྱང་། དེའི་སྤྱི་བ་པ་བྱུང་ནས་དན་སོང་དུ་མི་གྱུང་བ་དང་། དམུལ་བ་དང་ཡི་དུགས་དང་།  
your discipline will be maintained; though there might be an occasion when it is not, having purified this obscuration, you will not fall into the lower realms. Having purified the negative karma of being born as a hell being, a hungry ghost,

དུང་འབྱོར་སྤྱི་བའི་ལས་དན་ཐམས་ཅད་དག་ནས་དེར་མི་སྤྱེེ། གཤམ་ཏེ་སྤྱི་བ་ཀྱང་དེ་མ་ཐག་ཏུ་ཐར་ནས་བདེ་འབྲོམ་ཐེངས་གྱི་མཚོགས་ཏུ་སྤྱོད་ཅིང་རིམ་  
or an animal, you'll not take such a birth. Even if you do, immediately liberated, you'll take a felicitous rebirth in a higher realm, and gradually

གྱིས་སངས་རྒྱས་ཐོབ་པ་དང་། ཚོ་འདིར་ཡང་ཟས་གོས་ཚོགས་མེད་པར་འབྱུར་པ་དང་ལྷན་པ་དང་། བློ་དང་གོ་དོན་དང་བྱུང་གཤམ་དང་རྒྱལ་པོའི་  
attain awakening. In this life as well, you'll easily obtain food and clothing and not be harmed by disease,

ཚད་པ་ལ་སོགས་པའི་གོན་པས་མི་ཚུགས་པ་དང་། ལྷ་གན་དེ་རྗེ་དང་ཚངས་པ་དང་བརྒྱ་ལྷན་དང་རྒྱལ་པོ་ཚེན་པོ་བཞི་དང་།

negative spirits, sorcery, or the punishments of rulers. You'll be protected and guarded by Vajrapani, Brahma, the great kings of the four directions,

གོན་ལྷན་གྱི་སྡེ་དཔོན་ཚེན་པོ་བཅུ་གཉིས་གཡོག་བདུན་འབུམ་དང་བཅས་པས་སུང་ཞིང་སྐྱོབ་སྟེ། ཏུས་མ་ཡིན་པའི་འཚིབ་བཅོ་བརྒྱན་དང་།

and the twelve great Yaksha chiefs each with their 700,000 assistants. You'll be freed from all harm:

དགྲ་དང་གཅན་གཟན་ལ་སོགས་པའི་གོན་པ་ཐམས་ཅད་ཡིས་ཐར་ཞིང་། བསམ་པ་ཐམས་ཅད་ཡིངས་སུ་རྗེ་གསལ་པར་བྱེད་པར་འགྱུར་བ་སོགས་ལ།

from the eighteen kinds of untimely death, the harm of enemies, carnivorous beasts, and so forth. All your wishes will be fully realized, and so forth.

རྒྱས་པ་སྐྱབ་ལྷོའི་མའོ་གཉིས་ནས་ཕན་ཡོན་བསམ་གྱིས་མི་ཁྱབ་པར་གསུངས་ཤིང་། ཚོས་ཕལ་ཚེར་ལ་སྐྱོན་མངོགས་ཤིང་མཁྲུང་ཀའ་བཤམས་

In the two more extensive sutras of Menla, the benefits are said to be inconceivable. In the great monastic centers,

པའི་སྡེ་ས་ཚེན་པོ་གྲུང་དམར་རིང་དཔལ་ལོའར་ཚོས་སྡེ་ལ་སོགས་མཚན་ཉིད་གྱི་སྡེ་ས་ཐམས་ཅད་ནས་གསོན་པའི་སྐྱེ་རིམ་དང་། གཤིན་པའི་རྒྱེས་

such as Jang Damring Pelkhor Chöde, and their philosophical colleges, where the scholars find fault with most Dharma and are difficult to satisfy, only this Menla ritual for prolonging life and clearing away

སྒྲོལ་ལ་སྐྱེན་སྒྲིམ་པ་འོླ་མ་གཞན་ཚེ་གམི་དང་ཞིང་། བོད་ཡུལ་རྗེ་རྗེ་གདན་གླ་སའཛེ་བའི་མའུ་ན་དང་། བསམ་ཡས་བྱུང་ལུབ་ཚེན་བའི་མའུ་ན་དུ་  
the obscurations of death has spread widely. The ritual to be performed before the Jowo in Lhasa, Tibet's Bodhgaya, and before the Great Awakened One at Samye

བཀྲ་བ་རྒྱུ་འོླ་མ་ལ་ཡང་སྐྱེན་སྒྲིམ་འོླ་མ་གཞན་ཚེ་གམི་དུ་རྒྱུ་ལ་ཡང་སྐྱེན་སྒྲིམ་པ་མན་ཡོན་ཚེ་བ་མེད་པ་སའཛིད་ཚེས་  
is this ritual of Menla. You should trust that within any of the new and the ancient transmissions, the sutras and the tantras, nothing is more beneficial than Menla.

པར་གྱིས་། དེ་ལ་རྒྱས་བསྐྱེས་མང་ཡང་འདི་ཚོ་གཉེན་ལ་དོན་འཕུས་པ་དང་། རྒྱ་མའི་ལུགས་ཡིན་པ་སའཛིད་སྐྱེ་མི་དགོས་། འདི་ཡིད་སྐྱེ་ལ་ཡིན་  
There are many extensive and concise versions; this one has few words and the full meaning. Since it belongs to anutara yoga, rituals of purification are not needed. Since the offerings are mental,

བསམ་གཏོར་མཚོད་མེད་ཡུང་ཚོགས་པ་ཀུན་གྱིས་ཉམས་སུ་ལོངས་ཤིག་། ལུྟོང་ཡརྒྱུ།

it is all right not to offer tormas. Everyone should practice this. SHUBHAM DZAYENTU.

Translated under the guidance of Thrangu Rinpoche and Khenpo Karthar Rinpoche by Michele Martin with assistance from Ngodrup Burkhar and reference to translations by Lama Yeshe Gyamtso and Sarah Harding, Woodstock, N.Y., 1984, 1999, Kathmandu, 1999.

This four-line version was reproduced from Shenpen Ösel. Volume 4, Number 1.

